User Manual

English

Affiniti Series Diagnostic Ultrasound Systems

PHILIPS

Contents

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

1 Read This First

This manual is intended to assist you with the safe and effective operation of your Philips product. Before attempting to operate the product, read this manual and strictly observe all warnings and cautions. Pay special attention to the information in the "Safety" section.

The user information for your Philips product describes the most extensive configuration of the product, with the maximum number of options and accessories. Some functions described may be unavailable on your product's configuration.

Transducers are available only in countries or regions where they are approved. For information specific to your region, contact your local Philips representative.

NOTE

"L12-5" refers to the L12-5 50 transducer.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips makes no representation or warranty to the user or any other party with respect to the adequacy of this document for any particular purpose or with respect to its adequacy to produce a particular result. The user's right to recover damages caused by fault or negligence on the part of Philips shall be limited to the amount paid by the user to Philips for the provision of this document. In no event shall Philips be liable for special, collateral, incidental, direct, indirect or consequential damage, losses, costs, charges, claims, demands, or claims for lost profits, data, fees, or expenses of any nature or kind.

Unauthorized copying of this document, in addition to infringing copyright, might reduce the ability of Philips to provide accurate and current information to users.

"Affiniti," "Affiniti CVx," "Chroma," "Color Power Angio," "High Q," "PercuNav," "QLAB," "SonoCT," "xMATRIX," and "XRES" are trademarks of Koninklijke Philips N.V.

Non-Philips product names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

CAUTION

United States federal law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Intended Audience

This document is intended for sonographers, physicians, and biomedical engineers who operate and maintain your product.

Before you use your system and user information, you need to be familiar with ultrasound techniques. Sonography training and clinical procedures are not included here.

Intended Use/Indications for Use

The intended use of the Philips Affiniti series diagnostic ultrasound systems is diagnostic ultrasound imaging and fluid flow analysis of the human body with the following Indications for Use:

Philips

- Abdominal, Cardiac Adult, Cardiac Other (Fetal), Cardiac Pediatric, Cerebral Vascular, Cephalic (Adult), Cephalic (Neonatal), Fetal/Obstetric, Gynecological, Intraoperative (Vascular), Intraoperative (Cardiac), Musculoskeletal (Conventional), Musculoskeletal (Superficial), Other: Urology, Pediatric, Peripheral Vessel, Small Organ (Breast, Thyroid, Testicle), Transesophageal (Cardiac), Transrectal, Transvaginal.
- The clinical environments where the Affiniti diagnostic ultrasound systems can be used include clinics, hospitals, and clinical point-of-care for diagnosis of patients.

The systems are intended to be installed, used, and operated only in accordance with the safety procedures and operating instructions given in the product user information. Systems are to be operated only by appropriately trained healthcare professionals for the purposes for which they were designed. However, nothing stated in the user information reduces your responsibility for sound clinical judgement and best clinical procedure.

For indications for use for transducers, see “Indications for Use and Supporting Transducers” on page 132.

WARNING

Do not use the system for purposes other than those intended and expressly stated by Philips. Do not misuse the system, and do not use or operate the system incorrectly.

Installation, use, and operation of this product are subject to the law in the jurisdictions in which the product is used. Install, use, and operate the product *only* in such ways that do not conflict with applicable laws or regulations, which have the force of law.

Use of the product for purposes other than those intended and expressly stated by Philips, as well as incorrect use or operation, may relieve Philips or its agents from all or some responsibility for resultant noncompliance, damage, or injury.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

System users are responsible for image quality and diagnosis. Inspect the data that is being used for the analysis and diagnosis, and ensure that the data is sufficient both spatially and temporally for the measurement approach being used.

Clinical Benefits

The expected clinical benefits of the Affiniti series diagnostic ultrasound systems are related to the device's intended purpose to provide diagnostic ultrasound imaging and fluid flow analysis of the human body. These clinical benefits can be broadly classified as providing real-time noninvasive or minimally invasive visualization of the internal organs and anatomy to assist in providing a medical evaluation and diagnosis to direct patients' medical care. Because the Affiniti series diagnostic ultrasound systems provide images of human anatomy without the use of ionizing radiation, the systems can provide information about a patient's health status, without the risks of some other medical imaging modalities.

Warnings

Before using the system, read these warnings and the "Safety" section.

WARNING

Do not remove the protective covers on the system; hazardous voltages are present inside. Cabinet panels must be in place while the system is in use. All internal adjustments and replacements must be made by a qualified Philips field service engineer.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

To avoid electrical shock, use only supplied power cords and connect only to properly grounded wall (wall/mains) outlets.

WARNING

Do not operate this system in the presence of flammable gases or anesthetics. Explosion can result. The system is *not* compliant in AP/APG environments as defined by IEC 60601-1.

WARNING

Medical equipment must be installed and put into service according to the special electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) guidelines provided in the "Safety" section.

WARNING

The use of portable and mobile radio-frequency (RF) communications equipment can affect the operation of medical equipment. For more information, see "Recommended Separation Distance" on page 104.

User Information Components

The user information provided with your product includes the following components:

- *User Information* USB media: Includes all of the user information, except the *Operating Notes*.
- *Operating Notes*: Contains information that clarifies certain product responses that might be misunderstood or cause user difficulty.
- *Care and Cleaning of Ultrasound Systems and Transducers*: Included on the USB media. Describes care and cleaning procedures for your ultrasound system and transducers.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- *Disinfectants and Cleaning Solutions for Ultrasound Systems and Transducers*: Included on the USB media. Provides information about compatible cleaning and disinfecting products for your ultrasound system and transducers.
- *User Manual*: Provided with the product and included on the USB media. The *User Manual* introduces you to features and concepts, helps you set up your system, and includes important safety information. This manual also includes procedures for basic operation. For detailed operating instructions, see the *Help*.
- *User Information Update*: If required, contains updated information about the product.
- *Help*: Available on the system in some languages and included on the USB media, the *Help* contains comprehensive instructions for using the system. The *Help* also provides reference information and descriptions of all controls and display elements. To display the *Help*, touch **Utilities**, touch the **System** tab, and then touch **Help**.
- *Quick Guide*: Provided with the product and included on the USB media. The *Quick Guide* outlines basic features and step-by-step instructions for common functions.
- *Acoustic Output Tables*: Included on the USB media, it contains information about acoustic output and patient-applied part temperatures.
- *Medical Ultrasound Safety*: Included on the USB media, it contains information on bioeffects and biophysics, prudent use, and implementing ALARA (as low as reasonably achievable).
- *Shared Roles for System and Data Security*: Included on the USB media, it contains guidelines to help you understand security recommendations for your Philips product and information on Philips' efforts to help you prevent security breaches.
- *Using Ultrasound to Manage COVID-19 Related Lung and Cardiac Complications*: Included on the USB media, it contains imaging instructions and information pertinent to healthcare professionals engaged in the diagnosis and management of COVID-19 patients.

You can find user information here:

www.philips.com/IFU

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Product Conventions

Your product uses certain conventions throughout the interface to make it easy for you to learn and use:

- Three unlabeled buttons near the trackball are used with the trackball. The two buttons on either side of the trackball are called the "left and right trackball buttons," and they operate somewhat similarly to computer mouse buttons. The button above the trackball is called the "middle trackball button," and it is used to update the imaging display, to complete measurements, and to perform other operations as specified in procedures. The trackball arbitration icon, at the bottom of the display, indicates the current functions of the trackball buttons.
- Tabs along the top of the monitor display let you choose additional sets of setup options. Tabs along the top of the touch screen let you choose additional pages of controls.
- To type text into a text field, click in the field and use the keyboard.
- To display a list, click  . To scroll through a list, click the arrows at either end of the scroll bar or drag the scroll box up or down.
- Controls on the control panel include buttons, knobs, slide controls, and a trackball. Press a button to activate or deactivate its function. You can disable press behavior for soft key controls (see “Disabling Press Behavior for Soft Key Controls” on page 199). Press a knob to activate its function, or turn it to change the selected setting. Move a slide control to change its setting. Roll the trackball in the direction that you want to move an object.
- Controls on the touch screen include buttons, soft-key knob labels, and sliders. To use a touch screen button, simply touch it. To use a touch screen knob label, touch the label and adjust the corresponding knob, which is directly below it on the control panel. If two knob labels are available for the knob, you must first touch the knob label that you want to adjust. To use a slider, swipe the slider button, or touch a location on the slider, to move the slider button. For more information, see “Touch Screen Controls” on page 190.
- Many tabs on the touch screen contain multiple pages of controls. To display the next page, place your finger on the touch screen and swipe to the left. To return to the previous page, place your finger on the touch screen and swipe to the right.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- Some areas of the display include chevrons  . Selecting  displays or hides additional information, options, or fields.

User Information Conventions

The user information for your product uses the following typographical conventions to assist you in finding and understanding information:

- All procedures are numbered, and all subprocedures are lettered. You must complete steps in the sequence they are presented to ensure success.
- Bulleted lists indicate general information about a particular function or procedure. They do not imply a sequential procedure.
- Control names and menu items or titles are spelled as they are on the system, and they appear in bold text. Exceptions are the trackball, the buttons adjacent to it, and the TGC slide controls, all of which are unlabeled.
- Symbols appear as they appear on the system.
- The *pointer* is the cursor used to select elements on the display. Use the **Pointer** control to display the pointer.
- *Point* means to position the tip of the pointer or cursor on an item on the display.
- *Click* means to move the pointer or cursor to an object and press one of the unlabeled trackball buttons located on either side of the trackball.
- *Select* means to move the pointer to an object and press one of the unlabeled trackball buttons located on either side of the trackball to "highlight" the object (such as an item in a list), or in the case of a check box or when selecting options, to fill the object. You can also touch to select, highlight, and manipulate some objects on the display. *Deselect* means clicking or touching the object to remove the highlight or fill.
- *Double-click* means to quickly click twice to select an object or text.
- *Right-click* means to point at an item and then press and immediately release the right trackball button.
- **Ctrl***+click* means to press and hold the **Ctrl** key while clicking an item on the display.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- *Hover* means to pause the pointer over an item on the display.
- *Drag* means to place the pointer over an object and then press and hold the left or right trackball button while moving the trackball. Use this method to move an object on the display. You can also touch and hold some objects on the display and then drag to move the object.
- *Tap* means to touch the screen briefly with the tip of one finger.
- *Touch* means to press a button on the touch screen, located above the control panel. You can also touch to select, highlight, and manipulate some objects on the touch screen.
- *Swipe* means to touch the touch screen with the tip of your finger and move your finger in a quick motion either to the left or to the right. This action displays an additional touch screen, if one is available.
- In a procedure step, *use* followed by a control name means that the control location might vary depending on your system configuration and setups. For example, it may be a soft key in some instances but a touch screen control in others.
- *Highlight* means to change the color of a display selection (such as an item in a list) or overlay it with a colored bar, usually by clicking.
- The left side of the system is to your left as you stand in front of the system, facing the system. The front of the system is nearest to you as you operate it.
- Transducers and pencil probes both are referred to as transducers, unless the distinction is important to the meaning of the text.

Information that is essential for the safe and effective use of your product appears throughout your user information as follows:

WARNING

Warnings highlight information vital to the safety of you, the operator, and the patient.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

CAUTION

Cautions highlight ways that you could damage the product and consequently void your warranty or service contract or ways that you could lose patient or system data.

NOTE

Notes bring your attention to important information that will help you operate the product more effectively.

Upgrades and Updates

Philips is committed to innovation and continued improvement. Upgrades may be announced that consist of hardware or software improvements. Updated user information will accompany those upgrades.

Customer Comments

If you have questions about the user information, or you discover an error in the user information, in the USA, please call Philips at 800-722-9377; outside the USA, please call your local customer service representative. You can also send e-mail to the following address:

techcomm.ultrasound@philips.com

Supplies and Accessories

To order transducer covers, bite guards, biopsy guides, and other supplies, contact CIVCO Medical Solutions:

CIVCO Medical Solutions

102 First Street South, Kalona, IA 52247-9589

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Telephone: 800-445-6741 (USA and Canada), +1 319-248-6757 (International)

Fax: 877-329-2482 (USA and Canada), +1 319-248-6660 (International)

E-mail: info@civco.com

Internet: www.civco.com

You can order ECG trunk cables, lead sets, and electrodes from any supplier. Order only ECG trunk cables, lead sets, and electrodes classified as Type CF and Defibrillation Proof as specified in IEC 60601-2-27 subclause 201.6.2.

To order the items listed in the following table, see the referenced information and then contact your Philips representative.

System Supplies or Accessories

Item	Additional Information
Barcode scanner	See “Barcode Scanner” on page 231.
Cables	See “Approved Cables for Electromagnetic Compliance” on page 95.
DVD recorder	See “Approved Accessories for Electromagnetic Compliance” on page 97.
Foot switch	See “Connecting the Foot Switch” on page 156.
Printers	See “External Printers” on page 159.
Removable media	See “Media Compatibility” on page 226.
Transducers	See “Indications for Use and Supporting Transducers” on page 132.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Customer Service

Customer service representatives are available worldwide to answer questions and to provide maintenance and service. Please contact your local Philips representative for assistance. You can also contact the following office for referral to a customer service representative, or visit this "Contact Us" website:

www.healthcare.philips.com/main/about/officelocator/index.wpd

Philips Ultrasound, Inc.
22100 Bothell Everett Hwy
Bothell, WA 98021-8431
USA
800-722-9377

Regulatory Representatives

Australian Sponsor

Philips Electronics Australia Ltd
65 Epping Road
North Ryde NSW 2113
Australia

Brazilian Representative

Distribuidor Nacional:
Philips Medical Systems Ltda.
Av. Marcos Penteado de Ulhoa Rodrigues,
401 Setor Parte 39 – Tamboré
Barueri/SP, Brasil – CEP 06460-040
58.295.213/0001-78
102.167-1

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Registro ANVISA nº 10216710306
Responsável Técnico: Thiago Medeiros de Abreu CREA/SP: 5070149021

Local de Fabricação no Brasil - Affiniti 50 e Affiniti 70
Philips Medical Systems Ltda
Av. Otto Salgado, 250 - Prédio Varginha B2 Parte B,
Distrito Industrial Cláudio Galvão Nogueira, 37.066-440, Varginha, MG, Brasil
CNPJ: 58.295.213/0021-11

Malaysian Authorized Representative

Wakil Diberi Kuasa:
Philips Malaysia Sdn. Berhad (3690-P)
Level 9, Menara Axis
2 Jalan 51A/223
46100 Petaling Jaya
Selangor Darul Ehsan,
Malaysia

Telephone: 03-7965 7488

Manufacturer

The legal manufacturer is:

Philips Ultrasound, Inc.
22100 Bothell Everett Hwy
Bothell, WA 98021-8431
USA

If the UDI label on the system indicates “Made in India,” the physical manufacturing location is:

Philips India Limited
Plot No. B-79, MIDC, Phase-II, Chakan
Taluka: khed, Village: Savardari
District: Pune

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Maharashtra
410 501
India

Recycling, Reuse, and Disposal

Philips is concerned with helping protect the natural environment and helping ensure continued safe and effective use of this system through proper support, maintenance, and training. Philips designs and manufactures equipment in compliance with relevant guidelines for environmental protection. As long as the equipment is properly operated and maintained, it presents no risk to the environment. However, the equipment may contain materials that could be harmful to the environment if disposed of incorrectly. Use of such materials is essential for the implementation of certain functions and for meeting certain statutory and other requirements.

The European Union Directive on Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) requires producers of electrical and electronic equipment to provide reuse and treatment information for each product. This information is provided in a Philips Recycling Passport. Such recycling passports for Philips ultrasound systems are available on this website:

www.philips.com/a-w/about/sustainability/sustainable-planet/circular-economy/product-recycling-services

Recycling, reuse, and disposal information in this document is directed mainly at the entity with legal authority over the equipment. Operators are usually uninvolved in disposal, except in the case of certain batteries.

Passing Your System to Another User

If you pass this system to another user who will use the system for its intended purpose, then pass it on in its complete state. Particularly, ensure that all the product-support documentation, including all instructions for use, are passed on to the new user. Make the new user aware of the support services that Philips provides for installing, commissioning, and maintaining the

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

system, and for comprehensive operator training. Existing users must remember that passing on medical electrical equipment to new users may present serious technical, medical, privacy, and legal risks. The original user may remain liable, even if the equipment is given away.

Philips strongly advises you to seek advice from your local Philips representative before agreeing to pass on any equipment.

After you pass the system to a new user, you might still receive important safety-related information, such as bulletins and field change orders. In many jurisdictions the original owner has a clear duty to communicate such safety-related information to new users. If you are unable or unprepared to do this, inform Philips about the new user, so that Philips can provide the new user with safety-related information.

Final Disposal of Your System

Final disposal is when you dispose of the system in such a way that it can no longer be used for its intended purposes.

WARNING

Do not dispose of this system (or any parts of it) with industrial or domestic waste. The system may contain materials such as lead, tungsten, or oil, or other hazardous substances that can cause serious environmental pollution. The system also contains privacy-sensitive information, which should be properly removed (scrubbed). Philips advises you to contact your Philips service organization before disposing of this system.

Philips gives support for the following:

- Recovery of useful parts
- Recycling of useful materials by competent disposal companies

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- Safe and effective disposal of equipment

For advice and information, contact your Philips service organization, or see the following website:

www.healthcare.philips.com/us/about/sustainability/recycling

Perchlorate Material

In this system, perchlorate material is present in lithium coin cells or batteries. Special handling may apply to those items. For more information, see this website:

www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate

Discarding Batteries

Batteries should be discarded if there are visual signs of damage. Batteries should be discarded in an environmentally safe manner. Properly dispose of batteries according to local regulations.

WARNING

Do not disassemble, puncture, or incinerate batteries. Be careful not to short the battery terminals, because that could result in a fire hazard.

WARNING

Use caution when handling, using, and testing the batteries. Do not short circuit, crush, drop, mutilate, puncture, apply reverse polarity, expose to high temperatures, or disassemble. Misuse or abuse could cause physical injury.

WARNING

If electrolyte leakage occurs, wash your skin with large amounts of water, to prevent skin irritation and inflammation.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

2 Safety

Read this information before using your ultrasound system. It applies to the ultrasound system, transducers, recording devices, and any optional equipment. This section covers only general safety information. Safety information that applies only to a specific task is included in the procedure for that task.

This device is intended for use by, or by the order of, and under the supervision of a licensed physician qualified to direct the use of the device.

Report any serious safety incident that occurs in relation to the ultrasound system to Philips and to the competent authority of the country in which the user and patient are established.

WARNING

Warnings highlight information vital to the safety of you, the operator, and the patient.

CAUTION

Cautions highlight ways that you could damage the product and consequently void your warranty or service contract or ways that you could lose patient or system data.

Basic Safety

WARNING

Do not use the system for any application until you have read, understood, and know all the safety information, safety procedures, and emergency procedures contained in this "Safety" section. Operating ultrasound systems without a proper awareness of safe use could lead to fatal or other serious personal injury.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

Do not use this system for any application until you are sure that the system's periodic maintenance is current. If *any* part of the system is known or suspected to be defective or incorrectly adjusted, *do not use* the system until it is repaired. Operating the system with defective or incorrectly adjusted components could expose you and the patient to safety hazards.

WARNING

Do not use the system for any application until you are adequately and properly trained on ultrasound techniques. Sonography training and clinical procedures are not included in the system user information. If you are unsure of your ability to use ultrasound techniques safely and effectively, do not use the system. Operating ultrasound systems without proper and adequate training could lead to fatal or other serious personal injury.

WARNING

Do not operate the system with patients unless you have an adequate understanding of its capabilities and functions. Using the system without such understanding may compromise the system's effectiveness and the safety of the patient, you, and others.

WARNING

Never attempt to remove, modify, override, or frustrate any safety device on the system. Interfering with safety devices could lead to fatal or other serious personal injury.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

Use the system only for its intended purposes. Do not misuse the system. Do not use the system with any product that Philips does not recognize as compatible with the system. Operation of the product for unintended purposes, or with incompatible products, could lead to fatal or other serious injury.

WARNING

Stop use immediately if the system or the transducer appear to be malfunctioning. Contact your Philips representative immediately.

WARNING

Consult current peer-reviewed medical literature, professional guidelines and protocols, and medical experts regarding appropriate techniques, potential complications, and awareness of hazards prior to using ultrasound devices. Adhere to current evidence-based practices and standard-of-care methods in the use of ultrasound devices to prevent or reduce the occurrence of injuries to patients and users.

Electrical Safety

This equipment has been verified by a recognized third-party testing agency as a Class I device with Type BF and Type CF isolated patient-applied parts.

For the safety standards met by this system, see the “Specifications” section.

For maximum safety, observe these warnings and cautions:

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

WARNING

Do not connect the ultrasound system to the same circuit used for life-support devices.

WARNING

Shock hazards may exist if this system, including all externally mounted recording and monitoring devices, is not properly grounded. Protection against electrical shock is provided by grounding the chassis with a three-wire cable and plug. The system must be plugged into a grounded outlet. The grounding wire must not be removed or defeated.

WARNING

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, never connect the system power cord to a power strip or an extension cord. When using the power cord, always connect it directly to a grounded wall outlet.

WARNING

Use only Type BF and Type CF transducers for invasive procedures. Type B transducers are insufficiently electrically isolated for invasive use.

WARNING

Do not remove the protective covers on the system; hazardous voltages are present inside. Cabinet panels must be in place while the system is in use. All internal adjustments and replacements must be made by a qualified Philips field service engineer.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

Do not operate this system in the presence of flammable gases or anesthetics. Explosion can result. The system is *not* compliant in AP/APG environments as defined by IEC 60601-1.

WARNING

To avoid risk of electrical shock hazards, always inspect the transducer before use. Check the face, housing, and cable before use. Do not use if the face is cracked, chipped, or torn; the housing is damaged; or the cable is abraded.

WARNING

To avoid risk of electrical shock hazards, always turn off the system, disconnect it from the wall outlet, and wait at least 30 seconds before cleaning the system.

WARNING

All patient-contact devices, such as transducers, pencil probes, and ECG leads not specifically indicated as defibrillation-proof, must be removed from patient contact before application of a high-voltage defibrillation pulse.

See “Defibrillators” on page 42.

WARNING

During transesophageal echocardiographic (TEE) procedures, either remove the TEE transducer from the patient or disconnect the TEE transducer from the system immediately following image acquisition.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

Ultrasound equipment in normal operation, as with other medical electronic diagnostic equipment, uses high-frequency electrical signals that can interfere with pacemaker operation. Though the possibility of interference is slight, be alert to this potential hazard and stop system operation immediately if you note interference with a pacemaker.

WARNING

When using additional peripheral equipment powered from an electrical source other than the ultrasound system, the combination is considered to be a medical system. It is your responsibility to comply with IEC 60601-1 and test the system to those requirements. If you have questions, contact your Philips representative.

WARNING

Do not use nonmedical peripherals, such as report printers, within 1.5 m (5 ft) of a patient, unless the nonmedical peripherals receive power from an isolated power outlet on the Philips ultrasound system, or from an isolation transformer that meets medical safety standards, as defined by standard IEC 60601-1.

WARNING

All external devices and peripherals that you connect to the system must meet the safety standards defined by IEC 60601-1 or IEC 60950-1. This applies to all USB, HDMI, and serial input/output connections.

WARNING

Before you connect the system to a LAN, ensure that the LAN devices (for example, a router) are certified to IEC 60601-1 or IEC 60950-1.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

The system and patient-applied parts meet the standard IEC 60601-1. Applied voltages exceeding the standard, although unlikely, may result in electrical shock to the patient or operator.

WARNING

Connection of optional devices not supplied by Philips could result in electrical shock. When such optional devices are connected to your ultrasound system, ensure that the total system earth leakage current does not exceed 500 µA.

WARNING

To avoid risk of electrical shock, do not use any transducer that has been immersed beyond the specified cleaning or disinfection level.

WARNING

Operating the system with physio input signals that are below the specified minimum levels may cause inaccurate results. See the "Specifications" section.

WARNING

To avoid risks of electrical shock and fire hazards, inspect the system power cord and plug regularly. Ensure that they are not damaged in any way.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

Do not drape the power cord over any of the cable hooks or the handle on the system cart. Damage to the cord or power receptacle unit can occur if the cart is raised.

WARNING

Electrosurgical units (ESUs) and other devices intentionally introduce radio frequency electromagnetic fields or currents into patients. Because imaging ultrasound frequencies are coincidentally in the radio frequency range, ultrasound transducer circuits are susceptible to radio frequency interference. While an ESU is in use, severe noise interferes with the black-and-white image and completely obliterates the color image.

WARNING

To avoid risk of a burn hazard, do not use transducers with high-frequency surgical equipment. A burn hazard may result from a defect in the high-frequency surgical neutral electrode connection.

WARNING

Concurrent failures in an electrosurgical unit (ESU) or other device and in the outer layer of the TEE transducer shaft can cause electrosurgical currents to return along the transducer conductors. This could burn the patient, and the ultrasound system and the transducer could also be damaged. Be aware that a disposable transducer cover provides no protective electrical insulation at ESU frequencies.

WARNING

Using cables, transducers, and accessories other than those specified for use with the system may result in increased emissions from, or decreased immunity of, the system.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

To avoid the risk of electrical shock or intermittent system operation, ensure that the system power cord has a minimum of 15.24 cm (6 in) protruding from the back of the system before being routed up to the power cord hanger on the back of the system.

WARNING

Do not use ECG patient cables with detachable lead wires that have exposed male pins. Electrocution can result if these pins are plugged into AC power.

CAUTION

Although your system has been manufactured in compliance with existing EMI/EMC requirements, use of this system in the presence of an electromagnetic field can cause momentary degradation of the ultrasound image. When interference is present or intermittent, use caution when continuing to use the system. If interference occurs often, review the environment in which the system is being used, to identify possible sources of radiated emissions. These emissions could be from other electrical devices used within the same room or an adjacent room. Communication devices such as cellular phones and pagers can cause these emissions. The existence of radio, TV, or microwave transmission equipment located nearby can cause emissions. In cases where EMI is causing disturbances, it may be necessary to relocate your system.

CAUTION

For information on electromagnetic emissions and immunity as it applies to the system, see “Electromagnetic Compatibility” on page 89. Ensure that the operating environment of your system meets the conditions specified in the referenced information. Operating the system in an environment that does not meet those conditions may degrade system performance.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Defibrillators

Observe the following warnings when a defibrillation is required while using the ultrasound system.

WARNING

Before defibrillation, always remove all patient-applied parts from the patient; however, defibrillation-proof ECG leads may remain connected. The system will reestablish normal physio operation within 8 seconds after the application of a defibrillation pulse.

WARNING

Before defibrillation, always disconnect invasive transducers that remain in contact with the patient from the system.

WARNING

A disposable transducer cover provides no protective electrical insulation against defibrillation.

WARNING

A small hole in the outer layer of the transducer opens a conductive path to grounded metal parts of the transducer. The secondary arcing that could occur during defibrillation could cause patient burns. The risk of burns is reduced, but not eliminated, by using an ungrounded defibrillator.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Use defibrillators that do not have grounded patient circuits. To determine whether a defibrillator patient circuit is grounded, see the defibrillator service guide, or consult a biomedical engineer.

Fire Safety

Fire safety depends on fire prevention, isolating the cause, and extinguishing the fire. If you see evidence of smoke or fire, disconnect system power. Observe the following warnings when using the system.

WARNING

On electrical or chemical fires, use only extinguishers that are specifically labeled for those purposes. Using water or other liquids on an electrical fire can lead to fatal or other serious personal injury. Before attempting to fight a fire, if it is safe to do so, attempt to isolate the product from electrical and other supplies, to reduce the risk of electrical shock.

WARNING

Use of electrical products in an environment for which they were not designed can lead to fire or explosion. Fire regulations for the type of medical area being used should be fully applied, observed, and enforced. Fire extinguishers should be available for both electrical and nonelectrical fires.

WARNING

Damage to lithium-ion batteries may result in fire.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Mechanical Safety

A list of precautions related to mechanical safety follows; observe these precautions when using the system:

WARNING

Be aware of the wheels on the system cart, especially when moving the system. The system could cause injury to you or others if it rolls over feet or into shins. Use caution when going up or down ramps.

WARNING

When attempting to overcome an obstacle, do not push the system from either side with excessive force, which could cause the system to tip over.

WARNING

Position external peripheral devices away from the system. Ensure that they are secure. Do not stack them on the system.

WARNING

When positioning the monitor, move it carefully to avoid pinching hands or extremities against other objects, such as a bed rail.

WARNING

Never park the system on an incline.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

Use caution when going up or down inclines. Improperly handled, the system can cause injury to you or others.

WARNING

If you park the system on a floor that is tilted 10 degrees or more and set the caster brakes, one of the braked casters might not be touching the floor, which can cause the system to move.

WARNING

The brakes are intended as a convenience. To increase cart security, use wheel chocks when the system is parked.

WARNING

To avoid injury, Philips recommends against lifting the system cart.

WARNING

Before moving the system, move the control panel to the lowest, centered position, and lock the monitor. When extended, the monitor could swing out during transport, causing injury or equipment damage.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

Before wheeling the system over long distances on rough terrain, lock the monitor arm by pressing its articulating sections together, and secure the arm with the transport strap provided with the system. Otherwise, the monitor arm could swing out, causing injury or damage to the monitor and system.

WARNING

Before transporting the system in a vehicle, move the control panel to the lowest, centered position, lock the monitor arm by pressing its articulating sections together, and secure the arm with the transport strap provided with the system. Otherwise, the monitor arm could swing out, causing injury or damage to the monitor and system.

WARNING

When transporting the system, secure the system so that it cannot roll or tip. Engage the caster locks, and use wheel chocks and restraining straps. Do not attempt to hold the system in place manually during transport. Never strap or secure the system at any point on the control panel or monitor.

WARNING

To avoid damaging the monitor, follow the mechanical safety guidelines provided in this manual. If the monitor is damaged, contact your authorized service representative before using the system.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

If system operation is abnormal after you move or transport the system, contact your Philips representative immediately. System components are installed securely and can withstand considerable shock, but excessive shock can cause a system failure.

CAUTION

Ensure that the cables for all patient-applied parts are secure before moving the system. Use the cable management system to ensure that transducer cables are protected from damage.

CAUTION

Do not roll the system over transducer cables or power cables.

Equipment Protection

Follow these precautions to protect your system:

WARNING

To avoid improper operation, do not place the system adjacent to nor stacked with other equipment. If it becomes necessary to stack the system with or place it adjacent to other equipment, verify normal operation before use.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

CAUTION

Excessive bending or twisting of cables on patient-applied parts may cause failure or intermittent operation of the system. Do not roll the system over cables, which may damage them.

CAUTION

Improper cleaning, disinfection, or sterilization of a patient-applied part may cause permanent damage. For cleaning, disinfection, and sterilization instructions, see *Care and Cleaning of Ultrasound Systems and Transducers* and *Disinfectants and Cleaning Solutions for Ultrasound Systems and Transducers*.

CAUTION

Do not immerse the transducer connector in solution. The cables and transducer bodies are liquid-tight, but the connectors are not.

CAUTION

Do not use abrasive cleaners, or acetone, MEK, paint thinner, or other strong solvents on the system, peripherals, or transducers.

CAUTION

For optimal performance, connect your ultrasound system to a circuit dedicated solely for the system. Do not connect life-support devices to the same circuit as the ultrasound system.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

CAUTION

If systems, transducers, and peripherals have been in an environment below 10°C (50°F), allow them to reach room temperature before connecting or turning them on. Allow 24 hours for complete normalization. Otherwise, condensation inside the devices could cause damage. If the device was only briefly exposed to temperatures below 10°C (50°F), then the time required for the device to return to room temperature could be significantly less than 24 hours.

CAUTION

Storing your system above 60°C (140°F) could deform the casters.

CAUTION

When the system is on, do not block the fan-exhaust vent above the upper peripheral tray. This may result in the system overheating.

Product Compatibility

Do not use your system in combination with other products or components, unless Philips expressly recognizes those other products or components as compatible. For information about such products and components, contact your Philips representative.

Changes and additions to the system should be made only by Philips or by third parties expressly authorized by Philips to do so. Such changes and additions must comply with all applicable laws and regulations that have the force of law within the jurisdictions concerned, and best engineering practices.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

System changes and additions that are made without the appropriate training or by using unapproved spare parts may void the warranty. As with all complex technical products, maintenance by unqualified persons or using unapproved spare parts carries serious risks of system damage and personal injury.

Symbols

The International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) has established a set of symbols for medical electronic equipment that classify a connection or warn of potential hazards. The following symbols may be used on your product, its accessories, or its packaging.

Symbol	Standards and Reference	Reference Description	Additional Information
Safety			
	ISO 15223-1, Symbol 5.4.4 ISO 7000-0434A	Caution (ISO 7000-0434A).	--
	ISO 15223-1, Symbol 5.4.3 ISO 7000-1641	Consult instructions for use.	--
	ISO 7010, Symbol M002	Refer to instruction manual/booklet.	--
	IEC 60417, Symbol 5019	Protective Earth; Protective ground.	--
	IEC 60417, Symbol 5017	Earth; ground.	--

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Symbol	Standards and Reference	Reference Description	Additional Information
	IEC 60417, Symbol 5021	Equipotentiality.	--
	IEC 60417, Symbol 5840	Type B applied part.	Non-isolated patient connection.
	IEC 60878, Symbol 5333 IEC 60417, Symbol 5333	Type BF applied part.	Isolated patient connection.
	IEC 60417, Symbol 5335	Type CF applied part.	Isolated patient connection for applied part intended for intraoperative use, including direct cardiac application and contact with major vessels.
	IEC 60417, Symbol 5334	Defibrillation-proof Type BF applied part.	--
	IEC 60417, Symbol 5336	Defibrillation-proof Type CF applied part.	--
	ISO 15223-1, Symbol 5.4.2 ISO 7000-1051	Do not reuse.	--
	ISO 7010, Symbol P017	No pushing.	Warns of system overbalance due to external force.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Symbol	Standards and Reference	Reference Description	Additional Information
	IEC 60417, Symbol 5036	Dangerous Voltages.	Appears adjacent to high-voltage terminals, indicating the presence of voltages greater than 1,000 Vac (600 Vac in the United States).
	IEC 62570	MR Unsafe.	System is MR unsafe and presents a projectile hazard. Keep outside of the MRI scanner room.
Rx only	--	--	Rx Only. (USA federal law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician.)
	--	--	Indicates a hazard to patients with pacemakers. Do not place field generator within 200 mm (8 in) of a patient with a pacemaker.
	--	--	Indicates a possible pinch hazard when positioning the monitor.
	ISO 7010, Symbol W024	Warning: Crushing of hands.	--
	--	--	Warns that the system should not be used stacked with other equipment. If the system is used stacked with or adjacent to other equipment, verify normal operation before use.
	ISO 15223-1, Symbol 5.2.8 ISO 7000-2606	Do not use if package is damaged.	--

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Symbol	Standards and Reference	Reference Description	Additional Information
	--	--	Consult the electronic instructions for use (eIFU).
	ISO 15223-1, Symbol 5.2.7 ISO 7000-2609	Non-sterile.	--
	ISO 15223-1, Symbol 5.2.3 ISO 7000-2501	Sterilized using ethylene oxide.	--
	ISO 15223-1, Symbol 5.1.4 ISO 7000-2607	Use-by date.	--
	IEC 60417, Symbol 5134	Electrostatic sensitive devices.	Identifies ESD (electrostatic-discharge) sensitivity of a connector that is not tested as specified in IEC 60601-1-2. Do not touch exposed connector pins. Touching exposed pins can cause electrostatic discharge, which can damage the product.
	IEC 60417, Symbol 5140	Non-ionizing electromagnetic radiation.	Indicates that interference may occur in the vicinity of equipment marked with this symbol (IEC 60601-1-2).
Environmental			
IPX1	IEC 60529	Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (transducers).	Indicates that the device is protected against the effects of vertically falling water.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Symbol	Standards and Reference	Reference Description	Additional Information
IPX4	IEC 60529	Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (foot-operated device).	Indicates that the device is protected against the effects of splashing liquids.
IPX7	IEC 60529	Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (foot-operated devices).	Indicates that the device is protected against the effects of immersion.
IPX8	IEC 60529	Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (foot-operated device or transducer).	Indicates that the device is protected against the effects of immersion for up to 60 minutes.
IP44	IEC 60529	Degrees of protection provided by enclosures.	Indicates that the equipment inside the enclosure is protected against ingress of solid foreign objects having a diameter of 1.0 mm and greater. Indicates that water splashed against the enclosure from any direction shall have no harmful effect.
IP47	IEC 60529	Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (foot-operated device or transducer).	Indicates that the equipment inside the enclosure is protected against ingress of solid foreign objects having a diameter of 1.0 mm and greater. Indicates that the device is protected against the effects of immersion.
	IEC 60417, Symbol 5957	For indoor use only.	--
	ISO 15223-1, Symbol 5.3.7 ISO 7000-0632	Temperature limit.	Indicates the temperature range (noncondensing) for transport and storage. Does not apply to media.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Symbol	Standards and Reference	Reference Description	Additional Information
	ISO 15223-1, Symbol 5.3.9 ISO 7000-2621	Atmospheric pressure limitation.	Atmospheric pressure range for transport and storage.
	IEC 15223-1, Symbol 5.3.8 ISO 7000-2620	Humidity limitation.	The relative humidity range (noncondensing) for transport and storage.
	ISO 7000, Symbol 0623	This way up.	Points toward the side of the shipping crate that should be kept facing up.
	ISO 15223-1, Symbol 5.3.4 ISO 7000-0626	Keep dry.	--
	ISO 15223-1, Symbol 5.3.1 ISO 7000-0621	Fragile, handle with care.	--
	ISO 15223-1, Symbol 5.3.2 ISO 7000-0624	Keep away from sunlight.	--

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Symbol	Standards and Reference	Reference Description	Additional Information
	EN 50419:2006 WEEE Directive 2002/96/EC	WEEE symbol. Indicates the need for separate collection for electrical and electronic equipment in compliance with the Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) Directive. When accompanied by Pb or Hg, components of the device may contain lead or mercury, respectively, which must be recycled or disposed of in accordance with local, state, or federal laws.	--
	--	Product contains hazardous material. Dispose of properly. (Required by WEEE Directive; see EN 50419.)	--
	IEC 60878, Symbol 1135 ISO 7000-1135	General symbol for recovery/recyclable.	Do not throw away. Dispose of in accordance with local, state, or federal laws.
Connectors and Ports			
	IEC 60417, Symbol 5032	Alternating current.	--

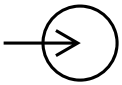
4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Symbol	Standards and Reference	Reference Description	Additional Information
	IEC 60417, Symbol 5031	Direct current.	--
	IEC 60417, Symbol 5010	"ON"/"OFF" (Push-Push).	
	IEC 60417, Symbol 5009	Stand-by.	On/Off control with Stand-by.
	--	--	On a two-position power switch, represents On ( ) and Off ().
	--	--	Connection for a pencil probe.
	--	--	Connection for a pencil probe.
	--	--	Connection for a transducer.
	--	--	Connection for ECG and physio leads.
	--	--	Connection for ECG and physio leads.

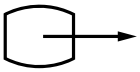
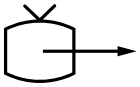
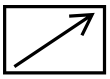
4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Symbol	Standards and Reference	Reference Description	Additional Information
	--	--	Print remote output.
	-	-	Input port for audio left/right, VHS/ S-VHS, microphone, CD, or DVD.
	--	--	Output port for audio left/right, VHS/ S-VHS, video patient monitor, black-and-white printer, or interlaced RGB output port.
	IEC 60417, Symbol 5034	Input.	--
	ISO 7000, Symbol 3650	USB Port.	--
	--	FireWire (IEEE 1394) input/ output port.	--
	IEC 60878 Symbol 5988	Computer Network.	Ethernet connection.
	IEC 60878, Symbol 5850	Serial Interface.	RS-232 serial port.
	--	--	System microphone.

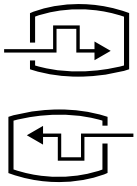
4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Symbol	Standards and Reference	Reference Description	Additional Information
AUX POWER ISOLATE OUTPUT	--	--	Isolated auxiliary power provided for connection of Philips-approved remote accessories.
	IEC 60417, Symbol 5114	Foot switch.	--
	IEC 60878, Symbol 5051	Television Monitor.	SVGA, DVI-I, DisplayPort, or HDMI connection.
	IEC 60878, Symbol 5529A	Video Output.	S-Video connection.
	--	--	Video output. S-Video connection.
	--	--	B/W Composite video output connection.
	--	--	Color composite video output connection.
	IEC 60878, Symbol 0093	Remote Control.	Video print trigger connection.
	--	--	VGA or parallel output port.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Symbol	Standards and Reference	Reference Description	Additional Information
	--	--	DVI video output receptacle.
	IEC 60417, Symbol 5016	Fuse.	Identifies fuse boxes or their locations. For continued protection from fire and shock, replace fuses only with fuses of the same type and rating.
Product Data Identifiers			
	--	--	Identifies the total mass of the system, including its safe working load, in kilograms. Indicates compliance with IEC 60601-1, Cl. 7.2.21.
	IEC 60878, Symbol 2794 ISO 7000-2794	Packaging unit.	--
	--	--	Global Medical Device Nomenclature Code.
	--	--	Global Trade Item Number.
	ISO 15223-1, Symbol 5.1.5 ISO 7000-2492	Batch code.	--

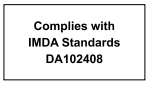
4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Symbol	Standards and Reference	Reference Description	Additional Information
MD	--	--	Indicates that the item is a medical device.
MOD	--	--	Model name for the device.
REF	ISO 15223-1, Symbol 5.1.6 ISO 7000-2493	Catalog Number.	--
SH	--	--	System hardware.
SN	ISO 15223-1, Symbol 5.1.7 ISO 7000-2498	Serial Number.	--
SVC	--	--	Service part number / field-replaceable unit (FRU) number.
UDI	--	--	Unique Device Identifier.
UPN	--	--	Universal part number.
	--	--	Unique Device Identifier, 2D barcode.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Symbol	Standards and Reference	Reference Description	Additional Information
	ISO 15223-1, Symbol 5.1.3 ISO 7000-2497	Date of Manufacture.	--
	ISO 15223-1, Symbol 5.1.1 ISO 7000-3082	Manufacturer.	--
	IEC 60417	Country of Manufacture.	--
	ISO 7000-3724	Distributor.	--
	ISO 7000-3725	Importer.	--
Regulatory Compliance			
	IEC 60878, Symbol 5172	Class II Equipment.	--
	--	--	UL (Underwriters Laboratories) classification symbol.
	--	--	Indicates that the electrical and electronic equipment is in compliance with Infocomm Media Development Authority (IMDA) Standards.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

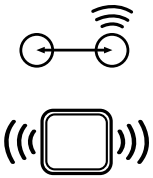
Symbol	Standards and Reference	Reference Description	Additional Information
	--	--	With an identification code (for example, 2AFNP-RIVNGFF525A), indicates that the system uses an embedded, FCC-approved Rivet Networks wireless adapter.
	--	--	With an identification code (for example CCAI15LP0780T9), indicates that the system uses an embedded NCC-approved (Taiwan) Rivet Networks wireless adapter.
	--	--	CSA (CSA Group) classification symbol.
	European Commission Medical Device Directive 93/42/EEC 2007/47/EC EU MDR 2017/745, Article 20, Annex 5	CE Mark of Conformity	--
	European Commission Medical Device Directive 93/42/EEC 2007/47/EC EU MDR 2017/745, Article 20, Annex 5	CE0086 - CE Mark of Conformity	--
	European Commission Medical Device Directive 93/42/EEC 2007/47/EC EU MDR 2017/745, Article 20, Annex 5	CE2797 - CE Mark of Conformity	--

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Symbol	Standards and Reference	Reference Description	Additional Information
EC REP	ISO 15223-1, Symbol 5.1.2	Authorized Representative in the European community.	--
EAC	--	--	Customs Union Mark of Conformity (EurAsian Conformity Mark).
50	--	--	Chinese Environmentally Friendly Use Period symbol.
UA.TR.116	--	--	Indicates that the system conforms with the Ukrainian Scientific Institute of Certification (UA.TR.116).
	--	--	Australian and New Zealand (RCM) Regulatory Compliance Mark indicates compliance with electrical safety, EMC, EME, and telecommunications requirements.
	--	--	KC (Korea Certification) mark for electrical and electronic equipment.
Segurança SGS OCP 0004 INMETRO	--	--	INMETRO mark as issued by SGS. Indicates third-party approval in Brazil.
Segurança TÜVRheinland OCP 0004 INMETRO	--	--	INMETRO mark as issued by TUV. Indicates third-party approval in Brazil.
PercuNav Option			

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Symbol	Standards and Reference	Reference Description	Additional Information
	--	--	Identifies the port for the PercuNav field generator.
	--	--	Identifies the TCU port that is used to connect the TCU to the ultrasound system.
	--	--	Identifies the port for the PercuNav tool connection unit (TCU).
	--	--	China RoHS Hazardous Substances are not contained in the EIP (Electronic Information Products).

Biological Safety

This section contains information about biological safety and a discussion of the prudent use of the system.

A list of precautions related to biological safety follows; observe these precautions when using the system. For more information, see *Medical Ultrasound Safety* on your *User Information* USB media.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

WARNING

Do not use the system if an error message on the display indicates that a hazardous condition exists. Note the error code, turn off power to the system, and call your authorized service representative.

WARNING

Do not use a system that exhibits erratic or inconsistent image updating. Discontinuities in the scanning sequence indicate a hardware failure that must be corrected before use.

WARNING

Perform ultrasound procedures prudently. Use the ALARA (as low as reasonably achievable) principle.

WARNING

Use only acoustic standoffs that have been approved by Philips. For information on ordering approved accessories, see “Supplies and Accessories” on page 26.

WARNING

Verify the alignment of the biopsy guide before use. See the “Biopsy Guides” section.

WARNING

Verify the condition of the biopsy needle before use. Do not use a bent biopsy needle.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

Transducer covers may contain natural rubber latex and talc. Those covers may cause allergic reactions in some individuals. See “FDA Medical Alert on Latex” on page 68.

WARNING

The M2203A bite guard strap contains natural rubber latex, which may cause allergic reactions. See “FDA Medical Alert on Latex” on page 68.

WARNING

In contrast studies using a high-MI acoustic field, capillary rupture, due to microbubble expansion within a capillary in an acoustic field, can cause extravasation. References: (1) Skyba, D.M., Price, R.J., Linka, A.Z., Skalak, T.C., Kaul, S. "Direct in vivo visualization of intravascular destruction of microbubbles by ultrasound and its local effects on tissue." *Circulation*, 1998; 98:290-293. (2) van Der Wouw, P.A., Brauns, A.C., Bailey, S.E., Powers, J.E., Wilde, A.A. "Premature ventricular contractions during triggered imaging with ultrasound contrast." *Journal of the American Society of Echocardiography*, 2000; 13(4):288-94.

WARNING

Preventricular contractions can be caused by the oscillations of microbubbles when a high-MI acoustic field is triggered in the heart at the end of systole. In a very sick patient with certain risk factors, theoretically, this could lead to ventricular fibrillation. Reference: van Der Wouw, P.A., Brauns, A.C., Bailey, S.E., Powers, J.E., Wilde, A.A. "Premature ventricular contractions during triggered imaging with ultrasound contrast." *Journal of the American Society of Echocardiography*, 2000; 13(4):288-94.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

If a sterile transducer cover becomes compromised during an intraoperative application involving a patient with transmissible spongiform encephalopathy, such as Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, follow the guidelines of the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and this document from the World Health Organization: WHO/CDS/ APH/2000/3, WHO Infection Control Guidelines for Transmissible Spongiform Encephalopathies. The transducers for your system cannot be decontaminated using a heat process.

WARNING

If the system becomes contaminated internally with bodily fluids carrying pathogens, you must immediately notify your Philips service representative. Components inside the system cannot be disinfected. In that case, the system must be disposed of as biohazardous material in accordance with local or federal laws.

WARNING

Select the correct application when starting an exam, and remain in that application throughout the exam. Some applications are for parts of the body that require lower limits for acoustic output.

FDA Medical Alert on Latex

March 29, 1991, Allergic Reactions to Latex-Containing Medical Devices

Because of reports of severe allergic reactions to medical devices containing latex (natural rubber), the FDA is advising health care professionals to identify their latex sensitive patients and be prepared to treat allergic reactions promptly. Patient reactions to latex have ranged from contact urticaria to systemic anaphylaxis. Latex is a component of many medical devices, including surgical and examination gloves, catheters, intubation tubes, anesthesia masks, and dental dams.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Reports to the FDA of allergic reactions to latex-containing medical devices have increased lately. One brand of latex cuffed enema tips was recently recalled after several patients died as a result of anaphylactoid reactions during barium enema procedures. More reports of latex sensitivity have also been found in the medical literature. Repeated exposure to latex both in medical devices and in other consumer products may be part of the reason that the prevalence of latex sensitivity appears to be increasing. For example, it has been reported that 6% to 7% of surgical personnel and 18% to 40% of spina bifida patients are latex sensitive.

Proteins in the latex itself appear to be the primary source of the allergic reactions. Although it is not now known how much protein is likely to cause severe reactions, the FDA is working with manufacturers of latex-containing medical devices to make protein levels in their products as low as possible.

FDA's recommendations to health professionals in regard to this problem are as follows:

- When taking general histories of patients, include questions about latex sensitivity. For surgical and radiology patients, spina bifida patients and health care workers, this recommendation is especially important. Questions about itching, rash or wheezing after wearing latex gloves or inflating a toy balloon may be useful. Patients with positive histories should have their charts flagged.
- If latex sensitivity is suspected, consider using devices made with alternative materials, such as plastic. For example, a health professional could wear a non-latex glove over the latex glove if the patient is sensitive. If both the health professional and the patient are sensitive, a latex middle glove could be used. (Latex gloves labeled "Hypoallergenic" may not always prevent adverse reactions.)
- Whenever latex-containing medical devices are used, especially when the latex comes in contact with mucous membranes, be alert to the possibility of an allergic reaction.
- If an allergic reaction does occur and latex is suspected, advise the patient of a possible latex sensitivity and consider an immunologic evaluation.
- Advise the patient to tell health professionals and emergency personnel about any known latex sensitivity before undergoing medical procedures. Consider advising patients with severe latex sensitivity to wear a medical identification bracelet.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

The FDA is asking health professionals to report incidents of adverse reactions to latex or other materials used in medical devices. (See the October 1990 FDA Drug Bulletin.) To report an incident, contact the FDA Problem Reporting Program, MedWatch, at 1-800-332-1088, or on the Internet:

www.fda.gov/Safety/MedWatch/

For a single copy of a reference list on latex sensitivity, write to: LATEX, FDA, HFZ-220, Rockville, MD 20857.

NOTE

The ultrasound system and transducers described in this document do not contain natural rubber latex that contacts humans. Natural rubber latex is not used on any Philips ultrasound transducer.

ALARA Education Program

The guiding principle for the use of diagnostic ultrasound is defined by the "as low as reasonably achievable" (ALARA) principle. The decision as to what is reasonable has been left to the judgment and insight of qualified personnel. No set of rules can be formulated that would be sufficiently complete to dictate the correct response to every circumstance. By keeping ultrasound exposure as low as possible, while obtaining diagnostic images, users can minimize ultrasonic bioeffects.

Since the threshold for diagnostic ultrasound bioeffects is undetermined, it is the sonographer’s responsibility to control total energy transmitted into the patient. The sonographer must reconcile exposure time with diagnostic image quality. To ensure diagnostic image quality and limit exposure time, an ultrasound system provides controls that can be manipulated during the exam to optimize the results of the exam.

The ability of the user to abide by the ALARA principle is important. Advances in diagnostic ultrasound, not only in the technology but in the applications of that technology, have resulted in the need for more and better information to guide the user. The output display indices are designed to provide that important information.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

There are a number of variables which affect the way in which the output display indices can be used to implement the ALARA principle. These variables include index values, body size, location of the bone relative to the focal point, attenuation in the body, and ultrasound exposure time. Exposure time is an especially useful variable, because it is controlled by the user. The ability to limit the index values over time supports the ALARA principle.

Applying ALARA

The system imaging mode used depends upon the information needed. 2D and M-mode imaging provide anatomical information, while Doppler, Color Power Angio (CPA), and Color imaging provide information about blood flow. A scanned mode, like 2D or Color, disperses or scatters the ultrasonic energy over an area, while an unscanned mode, like M-mode or Doppler, concentrates ultrasonic energy. Understanding the nature of the imaging mode being used allows the sonographer to apply the ALARA principle with informed judgment. Additionally, the transducer frequency, system setup values, scanning techniques, and operator experience allow the sonographer to meet the definition of the ALARA principle.

The decision as to the amount of acoustic output is, in the final analysis, up to the system operator. This decision must be based on the following factors: type of patient, type of exam, patient history, ease or difficulty of obtaining diagnostically useful information, and the potential localized heating of the patient due to transducer surface temperatures. Prudent use of the system occurs when patient exposure is limited to the lowest index reading for the shortest amount of time necessary to achieve acceptable diagnostic results.

Although a high index reading does not mean that a bioeffect is actually occurring, a high index reading should be taken seriously. Every effort should be made to reduce the possible effects of a high index reading. Limiting exposure time is an effective way to accomplish this goal.

There are several system controls that the operator can use to adjust the image quality and limit the acoustic intensity. These controls are related to the techniques that an operator might use to implement ALARA. These controls can be divided into three categories: direct, indirect, and receiver controls.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Acoustic Output Limits

This ultrasound system maintains acoustic output below the appropriate limits for each application, as listed here. The significant difference in magnitude emphasizes the need to select the correct application and remain in that application, so the correct application limits are in use for the appropriate application.

Limits for Non-Ophthalmic Applications

- $I_{spta.3} < 720$ mW/cm^2
- MI < 1.9
- TI < 6.0

Limits for Ophthalmic Applications

- $I_{spta.3} < 50$ mW/cm^2
- MI < 0.23
- TI < 1.0

Direct Controls

Application selection and the output-power control directly affect acoustic intensity. There are different ranges of allowable intensity or output based on your selection. Selecting the correct range of acoustic intensity for the application is one of the first things that occurs in any exam. For example, peripheral vascular intensity levels are not recommended for fetal exams. Some systems automatically select the proper range for a particular application, while others require manual selection. Ultimately, the user has the responsibility for proper clinical use. The ultrasound system provides both automatic (default) settings and manual (user-selectable) settings.

Output power has direct impact on acoustic intensity. Once the application has been established, the power control can be used to increase or decrease the intensity output. The power control allows you to select intensity levels less than the established maximum. Prudent use dictates that you select the lowest output intensity that is consistent with good image quality.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Indirect Controls

The indirect controls are those that have an indirect effect on acoustic intensity. These controls affect imaging mode, pulse repetition frequency, focus depth, pulse length, and transducer selection.

The choice of imaging mode determines the nature of the ultrasound beam. 2D is a scanning mode; Doppler is a stationary or unscanned mode. A stationary ultrasound beam concentrates energy in a single location. A moving or scanned ultrasound beam disperses the energy over an area and the beam is concentrated on the same area for a fraction of the time as that of an unscanned mode.

Pulse repetition frequency or rate refers to the number of ultrasound bursts of energy over a specific period of time. The higher the pulse repetition frequency, the more pulses of energy in a period of time. Several controls affect pulse repetition frequency: focal depth, display depth, sample volume depth, flow optimization, scale, number of focal zones, and sector-width controls.

Focus of the ultrasound beam affects the image resolution. To maintain or increase resolution at a different focus requires a variation in output over the focal zone. This variation of output is a function of system optimization. Different exams require different focal depths. Setting the focus at the proper depth improves the resolution of the structure of interest.

Pulse length is the time during which the ultrasonic burst is turned on. The longer the pulse, the greater the time-average intensity value. The greater the time-average intensity, the greater the likelihood of temperature increase and cavitation. Pulse length, burst length, or pulse duration is the output pulse duration in PW Doppler. Increasing the Doppler sample-volume size increases the pulse length.

Transducer selection indirectly affects intensity. Tissue attenuation changes with frequency. The higher the transducer operating frequency, the greater the attenuation of the ultrasonic energy. A higher transducer operating frequency requires more output intensity to scan at a deeper depth. To scan deeper at the same output intensity, a lower transducer frequency is required. Using more gain and output beyond a point, without corresponding increases in image quality, can mean that a lower frequency transducer is needed.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Receiver Controls

Receiver controls are used by the operator to improve image quality. These controls have no effect on output. Receiver controls only affect how the ultrasound echo is received. These controls include gain, time gain compensation (TGC), dynamic range, and image processing. The important thing to remember, relative to output, is that receiver controls should be optimized before output is increased. For example, before increasing output, optimize gain to improve image quality.

An Example of Applying the ALARA Principle

An ultrasound scan of a patient's liver begins with selecting the appropriate transducer frequency. After selecting the transducer and the application, which are based on patient anatomy, adjustments to output power should be made to ensure that the lowest possible setting is used to acquire an image. After the image is acquired, adjusting the focus of the transducer, and then increasing the receiver gain to produce a uniform representation of the tissue follows. If an adequate image can be obtained with the increase in gain, then a decrease in output should be made. Only after making these adjustments should you increase output to the next level.

Having acquired the 2D display of the liver, Color can be used to localize blood flow. As with the 2D image display, gain and image processing controls must be optimized before increasing output.

Having localized the blood flow, use the Doppler controls to position the sample volume over the vessel. Before increasing output, adjust velocity range or scale and Doppler gain to obtain an optimal Doppler trace. Only if maximum Doppler gain does not create an acceptable image do you increase output.

In summary: Select the correct transducer frequency and application for the job; start with a low output level; and optimize the image by using focus, receiver gain, and other imaging controls. If the image is not diagnostically useful at this point, then increase output.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Additional Considerations

Ensure that scanning time is kept to a minimum, and ensure that only medically required scanning is performed. Never compromise quality by rushing through an exam. A poor exam may require a follow-up, which ultimately increases exposure time. Diagnostic ultrasound is an important tool in medicine, and like any tool, it should be used efficiently and effectively.

Output Display

The system output display comprises two basic indices: a mechanical index and a thermal index.

The mechanical index is continuously displayed over the range of 0.0 to 1.9, in increments of 0.1 for all applications except contrast, where the minimum increment is 0.01.

The thermal index further consists of the following indices: soft tissue (TIS), bone (TIB), and cranial bone (TIC). Only one of these is displayed at any time. Each transducer application has a default selection that is appropriate for that combination. The TIB, TIS, or TIC is continuously displayed over the range of 0.0 to maximum output, based on the transducer and application, in increments of 0.1. For the location of the output display, see “Imaging Display” on page 209.

The application-specific nature of the default setting is also an important factor of index behavior. A default setting is a system control state that is preset by the manufacturer or the operator. The system has default index settings for the transducer application. The default settings are invoked automatically by the ultrasound system when power is turned on, when new patient data is entered into the system database, or when an application change occurs.

The decision as to which of the three thermal indices to display should be based on the following criteria:

- Appropriate index for the application: TIS is used for imaging soft tissue, TIB for a focus at or near bone, and TIC for imaging through bone near the surface, as in a cranial exam.
- Mitigating factors that might create artificially high or low thermal index readings: location of fluid or bone, or blood flow. For example, is there a highly attenuating tissue path so that the actual potential for local zone heating is less than the thermal index displays?
- Scanned modes versus unscanned modes of operation affect the thermal index. For scanned modes, heating tends to be near the surface; for unscanned modes, the potential for heating tends to be deeper in the focal zone.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- Always limit ultrasound exposure time. Do not rush the exam. Ensure that the indices are kept to a minimum and that exposure time is limited without compromising diagnostic sensitivity.

Mechanical Index (MI) Display

Mechanical bioeffects are threshold phenomena that occur when a certain level of output is exceeded. The threshold level varies, however, with the type of tissue. The potential for mechanical bioeffects varies with peak rarefactional pressure and ultrasound frequency. The MI accounts for these two factors. The higher the MI value, the greater the likelihood of mechanical bioeffects occurring. There is no specific MI value that means that a mechanical effect is actually occurring. The MI should be used as a guide for implementing the ALARA principle.

Thermal Index (TI) Displays

The TI informs the user about the conditions that exist that might lead to an increase in temperature at the surface of the body, within the body tissue, or at the point of focus of the ultrasound beam on bone. That is, the TI informs the user of the potential for temperature rise in body tissue. It is an estimate of temperature increase in body tissue with specific properties. The actual amount of any temperature rise is influenced by factors such as tissue type, vascularity, mode of operation, and others. The TI should be used as a guide for implementing the ALARA principle.

The bone thermal index (TIB) informs the user about potential heating at or near the focus after the ultrasound beam has passed through soft tissue or fluid; for example, at or near second- or third-trimester fetal bone.

The cranial bone thermal index (TIC) informs the user about the potential heating of bone at or near the surface; for example, cranial bone.

The soft tissue thermal index (TIS) informs the user about the potential for heating within soft homogeneous tissue.

You can choose to display TIS, TIC, or TIB. (For details on changing the TI display, see the system *Help*.) On systems with transcranial applications, TIC is displayed when you select a transcranial preset.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Mechanical and Thermal Indices Display Precision and Accuracy

The MI and TI precision is 0.1 unit on the system.

The MI and TI display accuracy estimates for the system are given in *Acoustic Output Tables*, on your *User Information* USB media. Those accuracy estimates are based on the variability range of transducers and systems, inherent acoustic output modeling errors, and measurement variability, as discussed in this section.

The displayed values should be interpreted as relative information to help the system operator achieve the ALARA principle through prudent use of the system. The values should not be interpreted as actual physical values in interrogated tissue or organs. The initial data that is used to support the output display is derived from laboratory measurements based on the measurement standards in IEC 62359: Test Methods for the Determination of Thermal and Mechanical Indices Related to Medical Diagnostic Ultrasonic Fields. The measurements are then put into algorithms for calculating the displayed output values.

Many of the assumptions used in the process of measurement and calculation are conservative in nature. Overestimation of actual *in situ* intensity exposure, for the vast majority of tissue paths, is built into the measurement and calculation process. For example:

- The measured water tank values are derated using a conservative, industry standard, attenuation coefficient of 0.3 dB/cm-MHz.
- Conservative values for tissue characteristics were selected for use in the TI models. Conservative values for tissue or bone absorption rates, blood perfusion rates, blood heat capacity, and tissue thermal conductivity were selected.
- Steady State temperature rise is assumed in the industry standard TI models, and the assumption is made that the ultrasound transducer is held steady in one position long enough for steady state to be reached.

A number of factors are considered when estimating the accuracy of the displayed values: hardware variations, estimation algorithm accuracy, and measurement variability. Variability among transducers and systems is a significant factor. Transducer variability results from piezoelectric crystal efficiencies, process-related impedance differences, and sensitive lens-focusing parameter variations. Differences in system pulser voltage control and efficiencies is also a contributor to variability. There are inherent uncertainties in the algorithms used to estimate acoustic output values over the range of possible system operating conditions and

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

pulser voltages. Inaccuracies in laboratory measurements are related to, among others, differences in hydrophone calibration and performance, positioning, alignment, and digitization tolerances, and variability among test operators.

The conservative assumptions of the output estimation algorithms of linear propagation, at all depths, through a 0.3 dB/cm-MHz attenuative medium is not considered in the accuracy estimate for the display. Neither linear propagation, nor uniform attenuation at the 0.3 dB/cm-MHz rate, occur in water tank measurements or in most tissue paths in the body. In the body, different tissues and organs have dissimilar attenuation characteristics. In water, there is almost no attenuation. In the body, and in particular, in water tank measurements, nonlinear propagation and saturation losses occur as pulser voltages increase.

Therefore, the display accuracy estimates are based on the variability range of transducers and systems, inherent acoustic output modeling errors, and measurement variability. Display accuracy estimates are not based on errors in, or caused by measuring according to, the IEC 62359 measurement standards, or the effects of nonlinear loss on the measured values.

Control Effects

Controls Affecting the Indices

As various system controls are adjusted, the TI and MI values may change. This will be most apparent as the output power control is adjusted; but other system controls affect the on-screen output values.

Power

The output power control affects the system acoustic output. Two real-time output values are on the display: TI and MI. They change as the system responds to power-control adjustments.

In combined modes, such as simultaneous Color, 2D, and PW Doppler, the individual modes each add to the total TI. One mode will be the dominant contributor to this total. The displayed MI will be from the mode with the largest MI value.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

2D Controls

- **Sector Width:** Narrowing the sector angle may increase frame rate. This action will increase the TI. Pulser voltage may be automatically adjusted down with software controls to keep the TI below the system maximums. A decrease in pulser voltage will decrease MI.
- **Number of Focal Zones:** More focal zones may change both the TI and MI by changing frame rate or focal depth automatically. Lower frame rates decrease the TI. MI displayed will correspond to the zone with the largest MI value.
- **Focus:** Changing the focal depth will change MI. Generally, higher MI values will occur when the focal depth is near the natural focus of the transducer.
- **Zoom:** Increasing the zoom magnification by pressing **Zoom** may increase frame rate. This action will increase the TI. The number of focal zones may also increase automatically to improve resolution. This action may change the MI, because the peak MI can occur at a different depth.

Color and Power Controls

- **Flow Opt:** Increasing the color sensitivity with the **Flow Opt** control may increase the TI. More time is spent scanning the color image. Color pulses are the dominant pulse type in this mode.
- **Color Sector Width:** Narrower color sector width will increase color frame rate and the TI will increase. The system may automatically decrease pulser voltage to stay below the system maximum. A decrease in pulser voltage will decrease the MI. If PW Doppler is also enabled, then PW Doppler will remain the dominant mode and the TI change will be small.
- **Color Sector Depth:** Deeper color sector depth may automatically decrease color frame rate or select a new color focal zone or color pulse length. The TI will change due to the combination of these effects. Generally, the TI will decrease with increased color sector depth. MI will correspond to the MI of the dominant pulse type which is a color pulse. However, if PW Doppler is also enabled then PW Doppler will remain the dominant mode and the TI change will be small.
- **Scale:** Using the scale control to increase the color velocity range may increase the TI. The system may automatically adjust pulser voltage to stay below the system maximums. A decrease in pulser voltage will also decrease MI.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- **Sector Width:** A narrower 2D sector width in Color imaging will increase color frame rate. The TI will increase. MI will change little, if at all. If PW Doppler is also enabled, then PW Doppler will remain the dominant mode and the TI change will be small.

M-Mode and Doppler Controls

- **Simultaneous and Update Methods:** Use of combination modes affects both the TI and MI through the combination of pulse types. During simultaneous mode, the TI is additive. During Duplex, the TI will display the dominant pulse type. The displayed MI will be from the mode with the largest MI value.
- **Sample Volume Depth:** When Doppler sample volume depth is decreased, the Doppler pulse repetition frequency (PRF) may automatically increase. An increase in PRF will increase the TI. The system may also automatically decrease the pulser voltage to remain below the system maximum. A decrease in pulser voltage will decrease MI.

Other Control Effects

- **2D Depth:** An increase in 2D depth will automatically decrease the 2D frame rate. This will decrease the TI. The system may also automatically choose a deeper 2D focal depth. A change of focal depth may change the MI. The MI displayed is that of the zone with the largest MI value.
- **Application:** Acoustic output defaults are set when you select an application. Factory defaults vary with transducer, application, and mode. Defaults have been chosen below the FDA limits for intended use.
- **Imaging Mode Controls:** When a new imaging mode is selected, both the TI and MI may change to default settings. Each mode has a corresponding pulse repetition frequency and maximum intensity point. In combined or simultaneous modes, the TI is the sum of the contribution from the modes enabled, and the displayed MI is the largest of the MI values associated with each mode and focal zone enabled. The system will return to the previously selected state if a mode is turned off and then reselected.
- **Transducer:** Each transducer type has unique specifications for contact area, beam shape, and center frequency. Defaults are initialized when you select a transducer. Factory defaults vary with transducer, application, and selected mode. Defaults have been chosen below the FDA limits for intended use.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Related Guidance Documents

For more information about ultrasonic bioeffects and related topics, see the following:

- "Bioeffects and Safety of Diagnostic Ultrasound." AIUM Report, January 28, 1993.
- "American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine Bioeffects Consensus Report." *Journal of Ultrasound in Medicine*, Vol. 27, Issue 4, April 2008.
- Third Edition of the AIUM "Medical Ultrasound Safety" document, 2014. (A copy of this document is provided with each system.)
- "Marketing Clearance of Diagnostic Ultrasound Systems and Transducers" FDA, June 2019.
- IEC 62359: Ultrasonics - Field Characterization - Test Methods for the Determination of Thermal and Mechanical Indices Related to Medical Diagnostic Ultrasonic Fields.
- WFUMB. "Symposium on Safety of Ultrasound in Medicine: Conclusions and Recommendations on Thermal and Non-Thermal Mechanisms for Biological Effects of Ultrasound." *Ultrasound in Medicine and Biology*, 1998: Vol. 24, Supplement 1.

Acoustic Output and Measurement

Since the initial use of diagnostic ultrasound, the possible human bioeffects from ultrasound exposure have been studied by various scientific and medical institutions. In October 1987, the American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine (AIUM) ratified a report prepared by its Bioeffects Committee ("Bioeffects Considerations for the Safety of Diagnostic Ultrasound." *Journal of Ultrasound in Medicine*, Vol. 7, No. 9 Supplement, September 1988), sometimes referred to as the Stowe Report, which reviewed available data on possible effects of ultrasound exposure. Another report, “Bioeffects and Safety of Diagnostic Ultrasound,” dated January 28, 1993, provides more-current information.

The acoustic output for this system has been measured and calculated in accordance with IEC 62359: Ultrasonics - Field Characterization - Test Methods for the Determination of Thermal and Mechanical Indices Related to Medical Diagnostic Ultrasonic Fields, and the June 2019 FDA document "Marketing Clearance of Diagnostic Ultrasound Systems and Transducers."

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

In Situ, Derated, and Water Value Intensities

All intensity parameters are measured in water. Since water absorbs very little acoustic energy, these water measurements represent a worst case value. Biological tissue does absorb acoustic energy. The true value of the intensity at any point depends on the amount and type of tissue and the frequency of the ultrasound that passes through the tissue. The intensity value in the tissue, *In Situ*, has been estimated by using the following formula:

In Situ = Water [$e^{-0.23alf}$]

Where:

Variable	Value
In Situ	*In Situ* intensity value
Water	Water value intensity
e	2.7183
a	Attenuation factor
Tissue	a(dB/cm-MHz)
Amniotic Fluid	0.006
Brain	0.53
Heart	0.66
Kidney	0.79
Liver	0.43
Muscle	0.55
l	Skin line to measurement depth (cm)
f	Center frequency of the transducer/system/mode combination (MHz)

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Since the ultrasonic path during an examination is likely to pass through varying lengths and types of tissue, it is difficult to estimate the true *in situ* intensity. An attenuation factor of 0.3 is used for general reporting purposes; therefore, the *In Situ* value which is commonly reported uses the formula:

In Situ derated = Water [$e^{-0.069lf}$]

Since this value is not the true *in situ* intensity, the term “derated” is used.

Mathematical derating of water based measurements using the 0.3 dB/cm-MHz coefficient may yield lower acoustic exposure values than would be measured in a homogenous 0.3 dB/cm-MHz tissue. This is true because nonlinearly propagating acoustic energy waveforms experience more distortion, saturation, and absorption in water than in tissue, where attenuation present all along the tissue path will dampen the buildup of nonlinear effects.

The maximum derated and the maximum water values do not always occur at the same operating conditions; therefore, the reported maximum water and derated values may not be related by the *in situ* (derated) formula. For example: A multi-zone array transducer that has maximum water value intensities in its deepest zone may have its largest derated intensity in one of its shallowest focal zones.

Conclusions Regarding Tissue Models and Equipment Survey

Tissue models are necessary to estimate attenuation and acoustic exposure levels *in situ* from measurements of acoustic output made in water. Presently, available models may be limited in their accuracy because of varying tissue paths during diagnostic ultrasound exposures and uncertainties in acoustical properties of soft tissues. No single tissue model is adequate for predicting exposures in all situations from measurements made in water, and continued improvement and verification of these models is necessary for making exposure assessments for specific applications.

A homogeneous tissue model with an attenuation coefficient of 0.3 dB/cm-MHz throughout the beam path is commonly used when estimating exposure levels. The model is conservative in that it overestimates the *in situ* acoustic exposure when the path between the transducer and the site of interest is composed entirely of soft tissue, because the attenuation coefficient of soft tissue is generally higher than 0.3 dB/cm-MHz. When the path contains significant amounts of fluid, as in many first- and second-trimester pregnancies scanned transabdominally, this model may underestimate the *in situ* acoustical exposure. The amount of underestimation

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

depends on each specific situation. For example, when the beam path is longer than 3 cm and the propagation medium is predominantly fluid (conditions that may exist during transabdominal OB scans), a more accurate value for the derating term is 0.1 dB/cm-MHz.

Fixed-path tissue models, in which soft tissue thickness is held constant, sometimes are used to estimate *in situ* acoustical exposures when the beam path is longer than 3 cm and consists largely of fluid. When this model is used to estimate maximum exposure to the fetus during transabdominal scans, a value of 1 dB/cm-MHz may be used during all trimesters.

The maximum acoustic output levels of diagnostic ultrasound devices extend over a broad range of values:

- A survey of 1990-equipment models yielded mechanical index (MI) values between 0.1 and 1 at their highest output settings. Maximum MI values of approximately 2 are known to occur for currently available equipment. Maximum MI values are similar for real-time 2D, M-mode, PW Doppler, and Color flow imaging.
- Computed estimates of upper limits to temperature elevations during transabdominal scans were obtained in a survey of 1988 and 1990 PW Doppler equipment. The vast majority of models yielded upper limits less than 1°C and 4°C for exposures of first-trimester fetal tissue and second-trimester fetal bone, respectively. The largest values obtained were approximately 1.5°C for first-trimester fetal tissue and 7°C for second-trimester fetal bone. Estimated maximum temperature elevations given here are for a “fixed-path” tissue model and are for devices having Ispta (derated) values greater than 500 mW/cm^2. The temperature elevations for fetal bone and tissue were computed based on calculation procedures given in Sections 4.3.2.1 through 4.3.2.6 in "Bioeffects and Safety of Diagnostic Ultrasound" (AIUM Report, January 28, 1993).

Acoustic Output Tables

Acoustic output tables are in *Acoustic Output Tables*, on your *User Information* USB media.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Acoustic Measurement Precision and Uncertainty

All table entries have been obtained at the same operating conditions that give rise to the maximum index value in the first column of the tables. Measurement precision and uncertainty for power, pressure, intensity, and center frequency are listed in the following tables.

NOTE

Per ISO/IEC Guide 98-3 (Uncertainty of Measurement - Part 3: Guide to the Expression of Uncertainty in Measurement), measurement precision on the following quantities is determined by making repeated measurements and stating the standard deviation as a percentage.

Acoustic Measurement Precision

Quantity	Precision (Percentage Standard Deviation)
Pr is the underated peak rarefactional pressure measured in megapascals (MPa).	Pr: 5.4%
P is the ultrasonic power in milliwatts (mW).	6.2%
f_{awf} is the center frequency in megahertz (MHz).	<1%
PII.3 is the derated spatial-peak pulse intensity integral in joules per square centimeter (J/cm^2).	PII.3: 3.2%

Acoustic Measurement Uncertainty

Quantity	Measurement Uncertainty (Percentage, 95% Confidence Value)
Pr is the underated peak rarefactional pressure measured in megapascals (MPa).	Pr: ±11.3%
P is the ultrasonic power in milliwatts (mW).	±10%

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Quantity	Measurement Uncertainty (Percentage, 95% Confidence Value)
f_{awf} is the center frequency in megahertz (MHz).	±4.7%
PII.3 is the derated spatial-peak pulse intensity integral in joules per square centimeter (J/cm^2).	PII.3: +18% to -23%

Operator Safety

The following issues and situations can affect operator safety when you are using an ultrasound system.

Repetitive Strain Injury

Repetitive ultrasound scanning has been associated with carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS) and related musculoskeletal problems. Some investigators have looked at a large population of sonographers with different types of equipment. An article, with feedback from a smaller geographical area, makes the following recommendations:

- Maintain your joints in optimum positions with a balanced posture while scanning.
- Allow frequent breaks to give soft tissue a chance to recuperate from awkward positions and repetitive movement.
- Avoid gripping the transducer with excessive force.

Repetitive Strain References

Pike, I., et al. "Prevalence of Musculoskeletal Disorders and Related Work and Personal Factors Among Diagnostic Medical Sonographers." *Journal of Diagnostic Medical Sonographers*, Vol. 13, No. 5: 219-227, September 1997.

Necas, M. "Musculoskeletal Symptomatology and Repetitive Strain Injuries in Diagnostic Medical Sonographer." *Journal of Diagnostic Medical Sonographers*, 266-227, November/ December 1996.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Foot Switch Warning

WARNING

The foot switch is not intended for use in wet locations, such as emergency rooms and operating theaters.

Philips Transducers

Use only transducers that are approved by Philips for use with your Philips ultrasound system. For a list of the transducers that are compatible with your ultrasound system, see “Supported Transducers” on page 275.

Glutaraldehyde Exposure

The United States Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) has issued a regulation covering levels of acceptable glutaraldehyde exposure in the working environment. Philips does not sell glutaraldehyde-based disinfectants with its products.

To reduce the presence of glutaraldehyde fumes in the air, be sure to use a covered or ventilated soaking basin. Such systems are commercially available. The most-current information about disinfection products and Philips transducers can be found on the Philips Transducer Care website:

www.Philips.com/transducercare

Infection Control

Issues related to infection control affect the operator and the patient. Follow the infection-control procedures established in your facility for the protection of both the staff and the patient.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Handling Contaminated Transducers

The primary area of concern is the handling of transducers that have contacted infected patients. Always wear gloves when you handle transducers used in TEE, endocavity, intraoperative, and biopsy procedures that have not been previously disinfected.

Clean and disinfect transducers according to the instructions for the type of transducer. For the correct procedure, see *Care and Cleaning of Ultrasound Systems and Transducers*.

CAUTION

The use of isopropyl alcohol (rubbing alcohol), denatured ethyl alcohol, and alcohol-based products on all transducers is limited. On non-TEE transducers, the only parts that may be cleaned with alcohol are the connector housing and the transducer housing and lens. On TEE transducers, the only parts that may be cleaned with alcohol are the connector housing and the control housing. Ensure that the solution is only 91% or less isopropyl alcohol or 85% or less denatured ethyl alcohol. Do not wipe any other part of a transducer with alcohol (including cables or strain reliefs), because it can damage those parts of the transducer. This damage is not covered by the warranty or your service contract.

Removing Blood and Infectious Material from the System

It is important to clean and maintain the ultrasound system and peripherals. If the equipment has come in contact with blood or infectious material, clean and disinfect the system and peripherals according to the instructions in the "System Maintenance" section.

ECG Cables and Lead Sets

For information on cleaning ECG cables and lead sets, see "Cleaning the System and ECG Equipment" on page 405.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Disposable Drape

If you believe contamination of the system might occur during an exam, take universal precautions and cover the system with a disposable drape. Consult your facility's rules regarding equipment use in the presence of infectious disease.

CAUTION

Position the disposable drape so that it does not block the vents on the system, the monitors, or the peripherals.

Electromagnetic Compatibility

Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) is defined as the ability of a product, a device, or a system to function satisfactorily in the presence of the electromagnetic phenomena that exists in the location of the product, the device, or the system being used; and, in addition, to not introduce intolerable electromagnetic disturbances to anything in that same environment.

Electromagnetic immunity is the ability of a product, a device, or a system to function satisfactorily in the presence of electromagnetic interference (EMI).

Electromagnetic emissions is the ability of a product, a device, or a system to introduce intolerable electromagnetic disturbances into the use environment.

Your system has been manufactured in compliance with existing electromagnetic compatibility requirements. Use of this system in the presence of an electromagnetic field can cause momentary degradation of the image quality. If this occurs often, review the environment in which the system is being used to identify possible sources of radiated emissions. These emissions could be from other electrical devices used within the same room or an adjacent room, or from portable and mobile RF communications equipment such as cellular phones and pagers, or from the existence of radio, TV, or microwave transmission equipment located nearby. In cases where electromagnetic interference (EMI) is causing disturbances, it may be necessary to relocate your system.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

The system is classified as Group 1, Class A equipment in accordance with international standard CISPR 11 for radiated and conducted electromagnetic disturbances. Compliance with this standard and the emissions characteristics of this equipment makes the system suitable for use in industrial areas and hospitals. If the system is used in a residential environment (for which CISPR 11 Class B is typically required), the system might not offer adequate protection to radio-frequency communication services. You may need to take mitigation measures, such as relocating or re-orienting the equipment.

WARNING

Using cables, transducers, or accessories other than those specified for use with the system may result in increased emissions or decreased immunity of the system.

CAUTION

Medical equipment has special precautions regarding EMC and must be installed and put into service according to the EMC information provided in the system's accompanying documents.

This section includes information on electromagnetic emissions and immunity as it applies to the system. Ensure that the operating environment of your system meets the conditions specified in the referenced information. Operating the system in an environment that does not meet these conditions may degrade system performance.

The information and warnings contained in this and other sections should be observed when installing and using the system to ensure its EMC.

NOTE

See the other electrical-safety warnings and cautions in this section.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Wireless Network Radio-Frequency Emissions

The following information applies to the system and any radio-frequency (RF) device included in or with the system. For information on related labeling, see “Symbols” on page 50.

For information on locating the radio-frequency device on your system, see “Radio-Frequency Devices” on page 149.

U.S. Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Part 15 Compliance Statement

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause unwanted operation.

This product does not contain any user-serviceable components. Any changes or modifications to this equipment not expressly approved by Philips may cause harmful RF interference and will invalidate the warranty and all applicable regulatory certifications and approvals, including authority to operate this device.

RF Exposure

The product complies with the FCC portable RF exposure limit for an uncontrolled environment and is safe for intended operation as described in this manual. RF exposure is further reduced by keeping the product as far as possible from the user’s body or, if available, by setting the device to lower output power.

Industry Canada Radio Standards Notice

This device complies with Canadian Radio Standards Specification RSS-210.

This device complies with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standards. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause unwanted operation of the device.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

For 5-GHz transmitters or devices co-located with 5-GHz transmitters:

- The device for operation in the band 5,150 to 5,250 MHz is for indoor use only, to reduce the potential for harmful interference to co-channel mobile satellite systems.
- The maximum antenna gain permitted for devices in the bands 5,250 to 5,350 MHz and 5,470 to 5,725 MHz shall comply with the equivalent isotropically radiated power (EIRP) limit.
- The maximum antenna gain permitted for devices in the band 5,725 to 5,825 MHz shall comply with the EIRP limits specified for point-to-point and non-point-to-point operation as appropriate.
- High-power radars are allocated as primary users (priority users) of the bands 5,250 to 5,350 MHz and 5,650 to 5,850 MHz. Those radars may interfere with or damage LE-LAN devices.

RF Exposure

The product complies with the Canada portable RF exposure limit for an uncontrolled environment and is safe for intended operation as described in this manual. RF exposure is further reduced by keeping the product as far as possible from the user's body or, if available, by setting the device to lower output power.

European Community Compliance Statement

The wireless technology radio device used in this product complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU. This product is intended to be connected to the Publicly Available Interfaces and used throughout the European Economic Area.

To view compliance and conformance information for the wireless technology radio device that is specific to your country, do the following:

1. Go to the Philips InCenter website: incenter.medical.philips.com/PMSPublic
2. From the top of the **Documentation and Downloads** page, click the **Quality & Regulatory Downloads** tab.
3. Select **Regulatory By Modality**, and then select **Ultrasound**.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4. Click the **Regulatory** tab, and then click **Declaration of Conformity (DoC)**.
5. To open and view a document, click the title.

The information provided at the InCenter website supports the RIVET Networks wireless adapter. Only systems labeled with the following code are affected by the compliance statements in that document:
FCC ID: 2AFNP-RIVNGFF525A

ECG Signal

WARNING

Operation of your system with ECG signals below 0.25 mV may cause inaccurate results.

The amplitude of the electrocardiogram (ECG) signal is critical for reliable frame triggering. Frame triggering should be used only when a clean, noise-free ECG waveform is observed on the ECG display. The ECG signal should be at least 0.25 mV to ensure reliable triggering when the system is used in the presence of the electromagnetic phenomena described in this section and elsewhere in your system user information.

Electrostatic Discharge Precautions

Electrostatic discharge (ESD), commonly referred to as a static shock, is a naturally occurring phenomenon that results in the flow of an electrical charge from a higher charged object or person to a lower charged object or person. ESD is most prevalent during conditions of low humidity, which can be caused by heating or air-conditioning. During low humidity conditions, electrical charges naturally build up on individuals and objects and can create static discharges.

The following cautions can help to reduce ESD effect:

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

CAUTION

Do not touch transducer connector pins or the system's transducer receptacle.

CAUTION

Handle the transducer by the metal connector housing.

CAUTION

Make contact with a metal surface of the system before connecting a transducer to the system.

CAUTION

The following precautions can help to reduce ESD: anti-static spray on carpets; anti-static spray on linoleum; anti-static mats; or a ground wire connection between the system and the patient table or bed.

CAUTION

On connectors labeled with the ESD sensitivity symbol , do not touch the connector pins, and always observe the preceding ESD precautions when handling or connecting transducers.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

Electrostatic discharges (ESDs) may cause the ECG heart rate display to increase by 10% to 15% for a few seconds after the discharge. However, the ECG heart rate display will return to normal within 4 seconds.

Electromagnetic Emissions

The system is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified in the table. The customer or the user of the system should ensure that it is used in such an environment.

Guidance and Manufacturer's Declaration: Electromagnetic Emissions

Emissions Test	Compliance	Electromagnetic Environment Guidance
RF emissions, CISPR 11	Group 1	The system uses RF energy only for its internal function. Therefore, its RF emissions are very low and are not likely to cause any interference in nearby electronic equipment.
RF emissions, CISPR 11	Class A	The system is suitable for use in all establishments, except domestic and those directly connected to the public low-voltage power supply network that supplies buildings used for domestic purposes.
Harmonic emissions, IEC 61000-3-2	Class A	
Voltage fluctuations/flicker emissions, IEC 61000-3-3	Complies	

Approved Cables for Electromagnetic Compliance

Cables connected to the system may affect its emissions. Use only the cable types and lengths listed here.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

Using cables, transducers, or accessories other than those specified for use with the system may result in increased emissions or decreased immunity of the system.

Approved Cables

Cable	Type	Length	Philips Part Number
Adult and pediatric ECG three-lead patient trunk cable (for AAMI and IEC lead sets)	–	2.7 m (9 ft) with lead set	453561490121/ M1669A
Adult ECG lead set (AAMI)	–	–	453561490131/ M1671A
Adult ECG lead set (IEC)	–	–	453561490141/ M1672A
Pediatric ECG lead set (AAMI)	–	–	453561490101/ M1624A
Pediatric ECG lead set (IEC)	–	–	453561490111/ M1626A
S-Video	S-Video cable	Any	–
LAN	Twisted pair	Any	–
USB	Shielded	Any	–

Approved Transducers for Electromagnetic Compliance

The imaging transducers used with the system may affect its emissions. The transducers listed in “Supported Transducers” on page 275, when used with the system, have been tested to comply with the Group 1, Class A emissions, as required by international standard CISPR 11. Use only those transducers.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

Using cables, transducers, or accessories other than those specified for use with the system may result in increased emissions or decreased immunity of the system.

Approved Accessories for Electromagnetic Compliance

Accessories used with the system may affect its emissions. The accessories listed here, when used with the system, have been tested to comply with the Group 1, Class A emissions as required by international standard CISPR 11. Use only the accessories listed here.

When connecting other accessories to the system, such as a remote video monitor or computer, it is the user's responsibility to ensure the electromagnetic compatibility of the system. Use only CISPR 11 or CISPR 22, Class A- or Class B-compliant devices, unless otherwise noted.

WARNING

Using cables, transducers, and accessories other than those specified for use with the system may result in increased emissions from, or decreased immunity of, the system.

Approved Accessories

Accessory	Manufacturer	Model Number
Black-and-white image printer, on-cart, AC-powered	Sony	UP-D711MD
Black-and-white image printer, on-cart, DC-powered	Sony	UP-D898DC/SYN
Black-and-white image printer, table-top	Sony	UP-D898MD/SYN

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Accessory	Manufacturer	Model Number
Color printer, table-top	Sony	UP-D25MD/SYN
DVD recorder	Sony	HVO-550MD
Ultrasonic imaging transducer	Philips	Use only the transducers listed in "Supported Transducers" on page 275.

Electromagnetic Immunity

The system is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified here. The customer or the user of the system should ensure that it is used in such an environment.

CAUTION

Cables, transducers, and accessories connected to the system may affect its immunity to the electromagnetic phenomena listed here. Use only approved accessories, cables, and transducers to minimize the chance of performance degradation of the system due to those types of electromagnetic phenomena.

CAUTION

If the system is connected to other customer-supplied equipment, such as a local area network (LAN) or a remote printer, Philips cannot guarantee that the remote equipment will work correctly in the presence of electromagnetic phenomena.

NOTE

The guidelines specified here may not apply in all situations. Electromagnetic propagation is affected by absorption and reflection from structures, objects, and people.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

At 80 MHz and 800 MHz, the separation distance for the higher frequency range applies.

Electromagnetic Immunity: Environment Guidance

Immunity Test	IEC 60601-1-2 Test Level	Compliance Level	Electromagnetic Environment Guidance
Electrostatic discharge (ESD), IEC 61000-4-2	± 8 kV contact, ± 15 kV air	Same as IEC 60601-1-2 test level	Floors should be wood, concrete, or ceramic tile. If floors are covered with synthetic material, the relative humidity should be at least 30%.
Electrical fast transient/ burst, IEC 61000-4-4	± 2 kV for power supply lines, ± 1 kV for input/ output lines > 3 m	Same as IEC 60601-1-2 test level	Mains power quality should be that of a typical commercial or hospital environment.
Surge, IEC 61000-4-5	± 0.5, ± 1, ± 2 kV common mode ± 0.5, ± 1 kV differential mode on AC line	Same as IEC 60601-1-2 test level	Mains power quality should be that of a typical commercial or hospital environment.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Immunity Test	IEC 60601-1-2 Test Level	Compliance Level	Electromagnetic Environment Guidance
Voltage dips, short interruptions, and voltage variations on AC lines, IEC 61000-4-11	Dips: 100% for 0.5 cycle at 0°, 45°, 90°, 135°, 180°, 225°, 270°, 315° Dips: 100% for 1.0 cycle at 0° Dips: 30% for 30 cycles at 0° Interruption: 100% for 5 seconds	Same as IEC 60601-1-2 test level	Mains power quality should be that of a typical commercial or hospital environment. If you require continued operation during power mains interruptions, Philips recommends that the system be powered from an uninterruptible power supply or a battery.
Power frequency magnetic fields, IEC 61000-4-8	30 A/m	Same as IEC 60601-1-2 test level	Power frequency magnetic fields should be at levels characteristic of a typical location in a typical commercial or hospital environment.
Conducted RF, IEC 61000-4-6	3 VRMS (0.15–80 MHz) 6 VRMS (ISM bands) AM 80% depth 1 kHz tone on AC line and I/O cables	Same as IEC 60601-1-2 test level	See “Electromagnetic Interference” on page 101.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Immunity Test	IEC 60601-1-2 Test Level	Compliance Level	Electromagnetic Environment Guidance
Radiated RF, IEC 61000-4-3	3 V/m (80–2,700 MHz) AM 80% depth 1 kHz tone	Same as IEC 60601-1-2 test level	See “Electromagnetic Interference” on page 101.
Proximity fields from RF wireless communications, IEC 61000-4-3	385 MHz 27 V/m, 450 MHz 28 V/m, 710 MHz 9 V/m, 745 MHz 9 V/m, 780 MHz 9 V/m, 810 MHz 28 V/m, 870 MHz 28 V/m, 930 MHz 28 V/m, 1,720 MHz 28 V/m, 1,845 MHz 28 V/m, 1,970 MHz 28 V/m, 2,450 MHz 28 V/m, 5,240 MHz 9 V/m, 5,500 MHz 9 V/m, 5,785 MHz 9 V/m	Same as IEC 60601-1-2 test level	See “Electromagnetic Interference” on page 101.

Although most remote devices comply with their applicable standards for immunity, those device requirements may not be as stringent as those required for medical equipment. It is the responsibility of the installer and the user of this remote customer-supplied equipment to ensure that it functions properly in the electromagnetic environment where the system is installed. The installer or the user of such a system should consult with experts in the field of electromagnetic compatibility and safety for guidance to ensure the safe and effective use of the created system.

Electromagnetic Interference

Electromagnetic interference may appear in many ways on the system and depends on the mode the equipment is operating in, the imaging control settings, the type of transducer being used, the type of electromagnetic phenomena, and the intensity level of the phenomena.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

WARNING

If electromagnetic interference is present or intermittent, use caution when continuing to use the system.

NOTE

Electromagnetic phenomena are not always present and may be transitory in nature. It may be extremely difficult to identify the source of the interference.

The following table describes a few typical interferences seen in imaging systems. It is impossible to describe all manifestations of interference, because it depends on many parameters of the transmitting device, such as the type of modulation used by the signal carrier, the source type, and the transmitted level. It is also possible for the interference to degrade the imaging system's performance and not be visible in the image. If the diagnostic results are suspicious, other means should be used to confirm the diagnosis.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Typical Interference on Ultrasonic Imaging Systems

Imaging Mode	ESD[1]	RF[2]	Power Line[3]
2D or 3D	Change of operating mode, system settings, or system reset. Brief flashes in the displayed or recorded image.	For sector imaging transducers, white radial bands or flashes in the center lines of the image. For linear imaging transducers, white vertical bands, sometimes more pronounced on the sides of the image.	White dots, dashes, or diagonal lines near the center of the image.
Color	Change of operating mode, system settings, or system reset. Brief flashes in the displayed or recorded image.	Color flashes, radial or vertical bands, increase in background noise, or changes in image color.	Color flashes, dots, dashes, or changes in the color noise level.
Doppler	Change of operating mode, system settings, or system reset. Brief flashes in the displayed or recorded image.	Horizontal lines in the spectral display or tones, abnormal noise in the audio, or both.	Vertical lines in the spectral display, "popping" noise in the audio, or both.
M-mode	Change of operating mode, system settings, or system reset. Brief flashes in the displayed or recorded image.	Increase in the image background noise or white M-mode lines.	White dots, dashes, diagonal lines, or increase in image background noise.

1. Electrostatic discharge (ESD) caused by discharging of electric charge buildup on insulated surfaces or persons.
2. Radio frequency (RF) energy from RF transmitting equipment such as portable phones, handheld radios, wireless devices, commercial radio and TV stations, and so on.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

3. Conducted interference on power lines or connected cables caused by other equipment, such as switching power supplies, electrical controls, and natural phenomena such as lightning.

Recommended Separation Distance

The following table provides recommended separation distances, which are guidelines on the distances that any RF transmitting equipment should be kept away from the ultrasound system to reduce the risk of interference with the system. Portable and mobile RF communications equipment should be used no closer to any part of the system, including cables, than the recommended separation distance calculated from the equation applicable to the frequency of the transmitter. Field strengths from fixed RF transmitters, as determined by an electromagnetic site survey, should be less than the compliance level in each frequency range as noted in the table. Interference may occur in the vicinity of equipment marked with the following symbol:  .

Field strengths from fixed transmitters, such as base stations for radio (cellular/cordless) telephones and land mobile radios, amateur radio, AM and FM radio broadcast, and TV broadcast, cannot be predicted theoretically with accuracy. To assess the electromagnetic environment due to fixed RF transmitters, an electromagnetic site survey should be considered. If the measured field strength in the location in which the system is used exceeds the applicable RF compliance level in the table, the system should be observed to verify normal operation. If abnormal performance is observed, additional measures may be necessary, such as reorienting or relocating the system.

WARNING

To avoid degrading system performance, keep portable RF communications equipment (including peripherals such as antenna cables and external antennas) at least 30 cm (12 in) away from any part of the ultrasound system, including cables.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

For transmitters rated at a maximum output power not listed in the following table, the recommended separation distance *d* in meters (m) can be estimated using the equation applicable to the frequency of the transmitter, where *P* is the maximum output power rating of the transmitter in watts (W) according to the transmitter manufacturer.

NOTE

At 80 MHz and 800 MHz, the higher frequency range applies.

NOTE

The recommended separation distance guidelines in the following table may not apply to all situations. Electromagnetic propagation is affected by absorption and reflection from structures, objects, and people.

The information provided here, in conjunction with "Electromagnetic Interference" on page 101, provides guidance on conducted and radiated interference from portable and fixed RF transmitting equipment.

Recommended Separation Distances by Transmitter Frequency

Rated Maximum Output Power of Transmitter (Watts)	150 kHz to 80 MHz $d = \frac{3.5\sqrt{P}}{V}$	80 to 800 MHz $d = \frac{3.5\sqrt{P}}{E}$	800 MHz to 2.5 GHz $d = \frac{7.0\sqrt{P}}{E}$
0.01	0.12 m (4.7 in)	0.12 m (4.7 in)	0.24 m (9.5 in)
0.1	0.38 m (15 in)	0.38 m (15 in)	0.76 m (30 in)
1	1.2 m (3.9 ft)	1.2 m (3.9 ft)	2.4 m (7.9 ft)

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Rated Maximum Output Power of Transmitter (Watts)	150 kHz to 80 MHz $d = \frac{3.5\sqrt{P}}{V}$	80 to 800 MHz $d = \frac{3.5\sqrt{P}}{E}$	800 MHz to 2.5 GHz $d = \frac{7.0\sqrt{P}}{E}$
10	3.8 m (12.5 ft)	3.8 m (12.5 ft)	7.6 m (25 ft)
100	12 m (39.4 ft)	12 m (39.4 ft)	24 m (78.7 ft)

Ultrasound systems can be sensitive to RF interference in the transducer passband. For example, for a 5-MHz imaging transducer, the frequency range of interference from a 3-V/m field may be from 2 to 10 MHz and manifest itself as described in “Electromagnetic Interference” on page 101.

Sensitivity to interference depends on operating mode and imaging control settings. The order of increasing sensitivity to interference as a function of operating mode is 2D mode, 3D mode, M-mode, Color mode, PW Doppler mode, and CW Doppler mode. Ultrasound systems are more sensitive to interference in the CW Doppler or PW Doppler operating modes, but the probability of interference is lower than in 2D mode or Color mode, because the susceptible frequency range is lower. Therefore, you are more likely to see interference in 2D or Color modes.

As an example, if a portable transmitter has maximum radiated power of 1 W and an operating frequency of 156 MHz, it should only be operated at distances greater than 1.2 m (3.9 ft) from the system. Likewise, a 0.01-W Bluetooth wireless LAN device operating at 2.4 GHz should be placed no closer than 0.24 m (9.5 in) from any part of the system.

Avoiding Electromagnetic Interference

A medical device can either generate or receive electromagnetic interference. The EMC standards describe tests for both emitted and received interference. Emission tests deal with interference generated by the device being tested. The ultrasound system does not generate interference based on the tests described in the referenced standards.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

An ultrasound system is designed to receive signals at radio frequencies and is therefore susceptible to interference generated by RF energy sources. Examples of other sources of interference are medical devices, information technology products, and radio and television transmission towers. Tracing the source of radiated interference can be a difficult task. Customers should consider the following in an attempt to locate the source:

- Is the interference intermittent or constant?
- Does the interference show up only with one transducer or with several transducers?
- Do two different transducers operating at the same frequency have the same problem?
- Is the interference present if the system is moved to a different location in the facility?
- Can the EMC coupling path be attenuated? For example, placement of a transducer or printer close to an ECG cable can increase electromagnetic interference. Moving the cable or other medical equipment away from the location of the transducer or printer can result in reduced electromagnetic interference.

The answers to these questions will help determine if the problem resides with the system or the scanning environment. After you answer the questions, contact your Philips service representative.

Use Restrictions Due to Interference

The physician must determine if an artifact caused by radiated interference will have a negative impact on image quality and the subsequent diagnosis.

WARNING

The physician must determine if tracking is accurate. Tracking in an untested environment or a location known to cause electromagnetic interference can contribute to inaccurate information and possible personal injury.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Measurement Accuracy

You can use the ultrasound system to make measurements and calculate results from ultrasound images. The measurements and calculations are then used with other clinical data to make a diagnosis.

Making a diagnosis based solely on measurements and calculations is not recommended. There are numerous factors to consider when using quantified data from any ultrasound imaging system. A careful analysis of those factors indicates that the accuracy of each measurement and calculation is highly dependent on image quality. Image quality in turn is highly dependent on system design, operator scanning technique, familiarity with system controls and, most important, patient echogenicity.

WARNING

System users are responsible for image quality and diagnosis. Inspect the data that is being used for the analysis and diagnosis and ensure that the data is sufficient both spatially and temporally for the measurement approach being used.

Measurement Precision

When making a measurement, accurate placement of the calipers is important. Also essential are the following techniques for ensuring that your images provide clinically meaningful measurements:

- Use leading edges (closest to the transducer) or borders for start and stop points of the measurement.
- Maintain a consistent transducer orientation for each type of measurement.
- Ensure that the area of interest fills as much of the display as possible.
- Account for Doppler velocity dynamics, angle correction, and measurement constraints.
- Minimize Doppler aliasing.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Measurement Resolution

Resolution is proportional to the transducer frequency. Penetration is inversely proportional to the transducer frequency. Resolution is always best near the focal zone of the transducer where the ultrasound beam is narrowest. Measurements are most accurate near the focal depth, and less accurate away from the focal point as the acoustic beam widens.

Effects of Display Size

The precision with which a caliper can be placed in an image can be improved by making sure that the area of interest fills as much of the display as possible. In 2D imaging, distance and area measurements are improved by minimizing the display depth and using the zoom function where possible. In M-mode and Doppler imaging, time measurements are improved by using the highest possible sweep speed. In Doppler imaging, velocity measurement accuracy is improved by using the smallest possible vertical scale setting.

Variations in Speed of Sound

Ultrasound imaging and Doppler algorithms assume that the speed of sound is constant at 1,540 m/s, but the speed of sound varies for different tissue types. In cardiovascular applications, where soft tissues, blood, and fatty layers are all involved, the error is random but is typically on the order of 2% to 5%.

Color and CPA Precision

The accuracy of a measurement made in Color or Color Power Angio (CPA) imaging is subject to the same limitations as a similar type of measurement made on a grayscale image. Color flow values are estimates of the mean velocity and do not necessarily represent peak velocities. The method of choice for quantifying flow for any application is spectral analysis using pulsed or continuous-wave Doppler imaging.

Doppler Measurement Limitations

Lower frequency transducers are capable of measuring higher velocity flows. Sample volume size is limited laterally by the acoustic beam. Penetration is best with low frequency transducers. Doppler peak velocity measurements could be affected by factors that affect the visibility of weak signals, such as sensitivity, gain, and reject.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Doppler Velocity Resolution

In computing velocity spectra, the velocity field (the area where flow exists) is assumed to be stationary. In cardiovascular applications, velocity fields do not remain constant, owing to the pumping action of the heart. The dynamics of blood flow places a practical upper limit on velocity resolution and spectral edge sharpness. The acoustic beam width determines the extent to which velocities can be differentiated in composite blood flow patterns.

Doppler Angle Correction

Doppler velocity measurements are most accurate when the acoustic beam is aligned parallel with blood flow. Deviations from the parallel alignment of up to 20 degrees for Doppler angles result in measurement errors of 6% or less. For larger alignment errors (Doppler angles exceeding 20 degrees), the measurement accuracy falls off rapidly, and use of angle correction is recommended (vascular applications only).

Doppler Aliasing

Pulsed-wave Doppler uses signal sampling techniques to compute a velocity spectrum. A theoretical limit exists for the maximum measurable velocity. When measuring high velocities, the sampling rate, which is determined largely by the sample volume depth, may be insufficient; and velocity wraparound (aliasing) may occur. A possible result could be that normal, high-velocity, laminar flows would be perceived as turbulence. Aliasing can be minimized in some cases by moving the baseline, increasing the velocity scale, or using a lower frequency transducer. In continuous-wave Doppler, aliasing is virtually eliminated.

Clinical Formulas

Some formulas used in clinical applications are based on assumptions or approximations, for example:

- Volume formulas may assume a specific three-dimensional shape.
- Pressure formulas use a simplified version of equations from fluid mechanics.

All formulas used in the ultrasound system are based on extensive clinical references from medical literature. For complete descriptions, see the *Help*.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

You are solely responsible for custom measurements and calculations and the accuracy of elements entered into the equations.

Algorithmic and Acquisition Errors

In general, there are two types of errors that can be introduced into a displayed measurement: algorithmic and acquisition.

Algorithmic error is the error introduced by making the basic measurements with acquisition errors as input to higher order calculations for display to the user. This error is associated with floating point versus integer type math, and is also subject to errors introduced by rounding versus truncating results for a given level of significant digit display of the values. The acquisition errors of the inputs are not carried forward into these higher calculations.

Acquisition errors are introduced by ultrasound machine electronics, relating to the front end signal acquisition, signal conversion, and the display of the image on the screen. These machine errors are also introduced by generation of a pixel scale factor, application of that factor to the caliper positions on the screen, and the subsequent measurement display. Calipers and readouts must be used against a known phantom image displayed on the screen; it is impossible to state or test a tolerance of a machine acquisition error by itself.

Accuracy Tables

The measurements provided by the system do not define a specific physiological or anatomic parameter. Rather, what is provided is a measurement of a physical property such as distance or velocity for evaluation by the clinician.

Measurement accuracy is also constrained by the caliper placement capability limit. The accuracy of area and circumference measurements and calculations is based on user variability and ability to accurately trace the object you want.

For each of the measurements available on the system, the measurement accuracy is shown in the following tables. Measurements listed are accurate to the percentage or units listed, whichever is greater.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

2D Measurement Range and Accuracy

Measurement	Accuracy	Range
Axial Distance	±1% or 1 mm	0.01 to 25 cm
Lateral Distance	±2% or 2 mm	0.01 to 35 cm
Diagonal Distance	±2% or 2 mm	0.01 to 25 cm
Skin Line Registration	±1 mm	--

2D Hip Angle Measurement Accuracy

Measurement	Accuracy
Alpha Angle	±3 degrees
Beta Angle	±3 degrees

M-Mode Measurement Range and Accuracy

Measurement	Accuracy	Range
Time	±2% or 4 ms	0.01 to 27.5 seconds (Affiniti CVx, Affiniti 70, and Affiniti 50) 0.01 to 11.3 seconds (Affiniti 30)
Distance	±2% or 1 mm	0.01 to 25 cm
Slope	±0.1 cm/s or 1 LSD	--

Doppler Measurement Range and Accuracy

Measurement	Accuracy	Range
Velocity	±1% full scale	PW: 0.1 cm/s to 8.8 m/s CW: 0.1 cm/s to 19.3 m/s
Time Difference	±2 columns or 4 ms	10 ms to 27.5 seconds (Affiniti CVx, Affiniti 70, and Affiniti 50) 10 ms to 14.6 seconds (Affiniti 30)

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

3D Measurement Range and Accuracy

Measurement	Accuracy	Range
Axial Distance	±1% or 1 mm	0.01 to 25 cm
Azimuthal Distance	±2% or 2 mm	0.01 to 33 cm
Elevation Distance	±2% or 2 mm	0.01 to 32 cm
Diagonal Distance (through volume)	±3% or 3 mm	0.01 to 40 cm
2D Area	±5% or 0.4 cm^2	0.01 to 1,000 cm^2
2D Circumference	±4% or 3 mm	0.03 to 160 cm
Ellipsoid Volume	±9% or ± 0.7 cm^3	0.01 to 2,000 cc
Stacked Contour Volume	±9% or ± 0.7 cm^3	0.01 to 2,300 cc

Panoramic Measurement Range and Accuracy

Measurement	Accuracy	Range
Distance	±5%	30 to 600 mm

3D Auto LAA Performance Validation

Testers compared the left atrial appendage (LAA) geometrical measurements obtained from the 3D manual measuring methodology to the subject 3D Auto LAA application measurement (semi-automated LAA segmentation initialization with and without user editing).

3D Auto LAA Test Methodology

- **Comparison**: 3D manual measurements to 3D Auto LAA measurements performed by three sonographers
- **Data Set**: 25 data sets

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

- **Population**: Typical patient population with varying anatomical and pathological measures to ensure comprehensive coverage. Within this patient population, the LAA maximum diameter ranged from 12 to 32 mm, the aspect ratio (min/max diameter) ranged from 0.48 to 0.95, and the 3D frame rate of image acquisition ranged from 10 to 41 fps.
- **Clinical Measurements**: The 3D Auto LAA application provides a workflow assist capability to measure the area, the circumference, and the maximum and minimum diameter at a user-defined cross-section of the LAA.
- **Success Criteria**: The success of this test was pre-established as the deviation of all metrics between the 3D Auto LAA and manual methods will have a 95% confidence interval (CI) of less than ±20% for an experienced sonographer in a comprehensive test data set independent of training.

3D Auto LAA Test Results Assessment

Results were assessed by comparison utilizing linear regression, and Bland-Altman analysis for agreement and correlation of the manual and automated results.

3D Auto LAA Test Results

The 95% limits of agreement for the 3D Auto LAA measurements (the area, the circumference, and the maximum and minimum diameters) made by the sonographer have less than 11% deviation from the values of the manual measurements, with a root-mean-square error (RMSE) of less than 5% and the bias of less than 3%. Regarding the user modifications to the LAA contour, the sonographers decided to edit the contour before finalizing measurements in 48% (13/27) of cases, whereas in the remaining 52% (14/27) of the cases, the sonographer accepted the initial automated contour as is. Lastly, inter-operator variability testing with three sonographers shows a higher degree of agreement for LAA size measurements relative to manual measurement and excellent correlation.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

ElastPQ Performance Validation

ElastPQ Penetration

ElastPQ shear wave elastography reports a single stiffness number for all of the tissues within the ROI box. Because the supporting transducer is a curvilinear transducer with a sector image, the ROI box is a sector, and the size changes as a function of the depth of the box:

- ROI center 20 mm: height 12 mm, width 5 mm
- ROI center 40 mm: height 12 mm, width 6.8 mm
- ROI center 60 mm: height 12 mm, width 8.5 mm
- ROI bottom 80 mm (deepest setting): height 12 mm, width 9.3 mm

ElastPQ Test Procedure

A C5-1 transducer was used with an Affiniti system using shear wave elastography imaging to take the following measurements on a uniform phantom.

A measurement is defined as placing the C5-1 transducer lightly in contact with surface of the phantom, using water as the coupling agent, adjusting the ROI box to an adjacent section of tissue at the required reported depth, and taking a single shear wave velocity measurement. The measurement data is recorded in “ElastPQ Test Results” on page 116.

NOTE

The ROI box can be anywhere in the 2D image, but the bottom of the ROI box cannot go deeper than 80 mm from the surface of the transducer.

Four materials with different elastic properties (three from the Custom Elasticity Phantom, 12-776/E-1690-3, and one from the CIRS 049A) were used to make measurements.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- Measurement Set 1 is 15 measurements taken at the 1.11 m/s region at depths of 30 mm, 45 mm, and 60 mm from the surface of the transducer, for a total of 45 measurements.
- Measurement Set 2 is 15 measurements taken at the 1.97 m/s region at depths of 30 mm, 45 mm, and 60 mm from the surface of the transducer, for a total of 45 measurements.
- Measurement Set 3 is 15 measurements taken at the 2.30 m/s region at depths of 30 mm, 45 mm, and 60 mm from the surface of the transducer, for a total of 45 measurements.
- Measurement Set 4 is 15 measurements taken at the 2.91 m/s region at depths of 30 mm, 45 mm, and 60 mm from the surface of the transducer, for a total of 45 measurements.

NOTE

All measurements were made with the **Res/Pen** control set to **RP** (Resolution and Penetration).

ElastPQ Test Results

Measurement Set 1 (Expected Value 1.11 m/s)

1.11 m/s Region Measurement Number	30 mm	45 mm	60 mm
1	0.94	0.89	1.05
2	0.91	0.86	1.07
3	0.96	0.90	1.06
4	0.92	0.85	1.08
5	0.92	0.91	1.05
6	0.89	0.90	1.11
7	1.06	0.92	1.05
8	0.93	0.89	1.06

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

1.11 m/s Region Measurement Number	30 mm	45 mm	60 mm
9	0.94	0.90	1.08
10	0.92	0.89	1.08
11	0.87	0.88	1.05
12	0.86	0.89	1.08
13	0.97	0.93	1.06
14	0.93	0.88	1.04
15	0.95	0.89	1.11
Mean	0.93	0.89	1.07
Standard Deviation	0.05	0.02	0.02

Measurement Set 2 (Expected Value 1.97 m/s)

1.97 m/s Region Measurement Number	30 mm	45 mm	60 mm
1	1.70	1.57	1.54
2	1.52	1.56	1.56
3	1.66	1.54	1.51
4	1.64	1.60	1.56
5	1.67	1.52	1.57
6	1.66	1.53	1.56
7	1.78	1.60	1.57
8	1.68	1.55	1.56
9	1.71	1.62	1.56

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

1.97 m/s Region Measurement Number	30 mm	45 mm	60 mm
10	1.74	1.57	1.58
11	1.61	1.51	1.57
12	1.66	1.51	1.58
13	1.68	1.63	1.58
14	1.62	1.56	1.54
15	1.74	1.56	1.51
Mean	1.67	1.56	1.56
Standard Deviation	0.06	0.04	0.02

Measurement Set 3 (Expected Value 2.30 m/s)

2.30 m/s Region Measurement Number	30 mm	45 mm	60 mm
1	2.13	2.28	2.22
2	2.11	2.09	2.28
3	2.10	2.01	2.20
4	2.06	2.18	2.23
5	2.16	2.02	2.09
6	2.03	2.15	1.99
7	2.28	1.93	2.11
8	2.16	2.04	2.30
9	2.11	2.13	2.17
10	2.16	2.12	2.00

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

2.30 m/s Region Measurement Number	30 mm	45 mm	60 mm
11	2.13	2.22	2.27
12	1.98	2.27	2.26
13	2.13	2.19	2.19
14	2.20	2.16	2.15
15	2.07	2.31	2.04
Mean	2.12	2.14	2.17
Standard Deviation	0.07	0.1	0.1

Measurement Set 4 (Expected Value 2.91 m/s)

2.91 m/s Region Measurement Number	30 mm	45 mm	60 mm
1	2.66	2.78	2.48
2	2.66	2.52	2.32
3	2.76	2.69	2.52
4	2.70	2.37	2.43
5	2.68	2.64	2.82
6	2.66	2.79	2.52
7	2.65	2.49	2.93
8	2.73	2.59	2.44
9	2.68	2.42	2.26
10	2.64	2.53	2.38
11	2.60	2.81	2.52

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

2.91 m/s Region Measurement Number	30 mm	45 mm	60 mm
12	2.66	2.74	2.35
13	2.74	2.42	2.84
14	2.62	2.83	2.82
15	2.78	2.97	2.76
Mean	2.68	2.64	2.56
Standard Deviation	0.05	0.17	0.21

ElastQ Performance Validation

ElastQ Penetration

ElastQ shear wave elastography can report a stiffness number at a point in a small area or from all of the tissues within the ROI box. Because the supporting transducer is a curvilinear transducer with a sector image, the ROI box is a sector, and the default ROI box size changes as a function of the depth of the box:

- ROI center 30 mm: height 26.6 mm, width 25.7 mm
- ROI center 45 mm: height 26.6 mm, width 30.9 mm
- ROI center 60 mm: height 26.6 mm, width 36.3 mm
- ROI bottom 80 mm (deepest setting): height 26.6 mm, width 38.0 mm

ElastQ Test Procedure

A C5-1 transducer was used with an Affiniti system using shear wave elastography imaging to take the following measurements on a uniform phantom.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Measurements were taken in four planes from three imaging depths (30 mm, 45 mm, and 60 mm). To simulate rocking of the transducer in intercostal spaces during human scanning, measurements were repeated with the transducer angled ±15 degrees and 0 degrees on the phantom, with respect to azimuth. To simulate slight compression of tissues with transducers during abdominal scanning, measurements were repeated with and without a small amount of phantom pre-compression with the transducer.

A measurement is defined as placing the C5-1 transducer, which is clipped on a transducer stand, lightly in contact with surface of the phantom, using water as the coupling agent, adjusting the ROI box size to 50% of echo image width and 3 cm in depth, moving it to the required reported depth, adjusting the stiffness scale properly, and taking a stiffness measurement with the box measurement tool. Six measurements were needed to cover three tilting angles and pre-compression on and off. The cylindrical phantom was rotated 45 degrees, and six measurements were retaken. Four such planes through the phantom were sampled for a total of 24 measurements per phantom per depth at 30 mm, 45 mm, and 60 mm from the surface of the transducer. For each phantom, the measurement set contains a total of 72 measurements. The measurements were taken on a CIRS Model 603-31-00 phantom set.

NOTE

The ROI box can be anywhere in the 2D image, but the bottom of the ROI box cannot go deeper than 80 mm from the surface of the transducer.

ElastQ Test Results

Measurement Set 1 (4.5 kPa)

Measurement Plane	Tilt/Pressure	Stiffness (kPa) at 30 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 45 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 60 mm
1	0° tilting without pressure	3.04	3.2	2.82
2	0° tilting without pressure	2.99	3.09	2.82
3	0° tilting without pressure	3.16	3.1	2.83

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Measurement Plane	Tilt/Pressure	Stiffness (kPa) at 30 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 45 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 60 mm
4	0° tilting without pressure	3.02	3.09	2.82
1	0° tilting with pressure	2.99	2.93	2.9
2	0° tilting with pressure	3.08	3.08	2.83
3	0° tilting with pressure	3.06	3.12	2.82
4	0° tilting with pressure	3.08	3.06	2.76
1	15° tilting without pressure	3.09	3.08	2.8
2	15° tilting without pressure	3.04	3.11	2.83
3	15° tilting without pressure	3.16	3.09	2.85
4	15° tilting without pressure	3.22	3.09	2.89
1	15° tilting with pressure	3.07	3.07	2.87
2	15° tilting with pressure	3.08	3.12	2.93
3	15° tilting with pressure	3.02	3.13	2.83
4	15° tilting with pressure	2.97	3.04	2.89
1	−15° tilting without pressure	2.96	3.06	3.02
2	−15° tilting without pressure	3.19	3.14	2.89
3	−15° tilting without pressure	3.07	3.25	2.88
4	−15° tilting without pressure	3.19	3.17	2.83
1	−15° tilting with pressure	3.01	3.11	2.87
2	−15° tilting with pressure	3.18	3.09	2.8
3	−15° tilting with pressure	3.13	3.17	2.83
4	−15° tilting with pressure	3.24	3.15	2.87

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Measurement Plane	Tilt/Pressure	Stiffness (kPa) at 30 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 45 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 60 mm
Mean Stiffness (kPa)		3.085	3.105833333	2.853333
Error (%)		31.44444444	30.98148148	36.5926
Standard Deviation(kPa)		0.079791395	0.059645946	0.051451

Measurement Set 2 (8.7 kPa)

Measurement Plane	Tilt/Pressure	Stiffness (kPa) at 30 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 45 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 60 mm
1	0° tilting without pressure	5.16	5.07	5.5
2	0° tilting without pressure	5.22	5.5	5.38
3	0° tilting without pressure	5.23	5.74	5.3
4	0° tilting without pressure	5.2	5.44	5.34
1	0° tilting with pressure	5.17	5.31	5.24
2	0° tilting with pressure	5.23	5.42	5.36
3	0° tilting with pressure	5.35	5.78	5.18
4	0° tilting with pressure	5.27	5.44	5.2
1	15° tilting without pressure	5.49	5.92	5.08
2	15° tilting without pressure	5.69	5.78	5.12
3	15° tilting without pressure	5.04	5.93	5.27
4	15° tilting without pressure	5.59	5.87	5.1
1	15° tilting with pressure	5.67	6.01	5.24
2	15° tilting with pressure	5.26	5.85	5.21

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Measurement Plane	Tilt/Pressure	Stiffness (kPa) at 30 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 45 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 60 mm
3	15° tilting with pressure	5.15	5.72	5.45
4	15° tilting with pressure	5.57	5.78	5.29
1	−15° tilting without pressure	5.1	5.58	5.47
2	−15° tilting without pressure	5.1	5.33	5.04
3	−15° tilting without pressure	5.37	5.76	5.14
4	−15° tilting without pressure	5.36	5.86	5.55
1	−15° tilting with pressure	5.29	5.86	5.23
2	−15° tilting with pressure	5.36	5.75	5.65
3	−15° tilting with pressure	5.2	5.85	5.09
4	−15° tilting with pressure	5.17	5.98	5.33
Mean Stiffness (kPa)		5.301666667	5.68875	5.281667
Error (%)		39.06130268	34.61206897	39.2912
Standard Deviation (kPa)		0.177826382	0.239710111	0.156063

Measurement Set 3 (11 kPa)

Measurement Plane	Tilt/Pressure	Stiffness (kPa) at 30 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 45 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 60 mm
1	0° tilting without pressure	7.07	7.53	7.08
2	0° tilting without pressure	6.98	7.49	6.93
3	0° tilting without pressure	6.98	7.89	7.19
4	0° tilting without pressure	7.41	7.56	7.42

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Measurement Plane	Tilt/Pressure	Stiffness (kPa) at 30 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 45 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 60 mm
1	0° tilting with pressure	7.11	8.18	7.18
2	0° tilting with pressure	7.14	7.42	7.09
3	0° tilting with pressure	7.34	7.74	7.14
4	0° tilting with pressure	7.43	7.78	7.34
1	15° tilting without pressure	7.99	7.69	7.46
2	15° tilting without pressure	6.76	7.7	7.42
3	15° tilting without pressure	7.2	8.08	7.55
4	15° tilting without pressure	7.01	7.72	7.29
1	15° tilting with pressure	7.53	7.71	7.37
2	15° tilting with pressure	7.29	7.87	7.65
3	15° tilting with pressure	7.43	7.48	7.86
4	15° tilting with pressure	7.13	7.78	7.39
1	−15° tilting without pressure	6.91	8	6.83
2	−15° tilting without pressure	6.78	7.83	7.2
3	−15° tilting without pressure	7.12	7.9	6.99
4	−15° tilting without pressure	6.82	7.46	7.03
1	−15° tilting with pressure	7.44	8.03	7.12
2	−15° tilting with pressure	7.34	7.96	7.02
3	−15° tilting with pressure	7.63	8.17	7.15
4	−15° tilting with pressure	6.93	7.86	6.98

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Measurement Plane	Tilt/Pressure	Stiffness (kPa) at 30 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 45 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 60 mm
Mean Stiffness (kPa)		7.19875	7.784583333	7.236667
Error (%)		34.55681818	29.23106061	34.2121
Standard Deviation (kPa)		0.289889526	0.216986543	0.240532

Measurement Set 4 (24.2 kPa)

Measurement Plane	Tilt/Pressure	Stiffness (kPa) at 30 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 45 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 60 mm
1	0° tilting without pressure	19.1	22.2	22
2	0° tilting without pressure	20.1	22.2	21.9
3	0° tilting without pressure	19.5	22.3	21.6
4	0° tilting without pressure	19.5	22.5	22.1
1	0° tilting with pressure	19.2	22.3	22.7
2	0° tilting with pressure	20	22.9	22.5
3	0° tilting with pressure	19	22.6	22
4	0° tilting with pressure	20.4	22.6	21.8
1	15° tilting without pressure	20.3	22.9	22.1
2	15° tilting without pressure	20.1	22.1	21.4
3	15° tilting without pressure	19.9	22.3	23.1
4	15° tilting without pressure	20	23.2	23
1	15° tilting with pressure	19.4	23	22
2	15° tilting with pressure	20.1	22.7	22.5

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Measurement Plane	Tilt/Pressure	Stiffness (kPa) at 30 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 45 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 60 mm
3	15° tilting with pressure	20	22.7	23.1
4	15° tilting with pressure	20.5	22	22
1	−15° tilting without pressure	19.8	23.1	22.9
2	−15° tilting without pressure	19.4	21.7	21.8
3	−15° tilting without pressure	20	22.5	22.8
4	−15° tilting without pressure	20.2	22.2	22
1	−15° tilting with pressure	20.2	22.5	22
2	−15° tilting with pressure	20.8	21.3	22.5
3	−15° tilting with pressure	20.4	22.4	22.8
4	−15° tilting with pressure	20.4	22.3	21.4
Mean Stiffness (kPa)		19.92916667	22.4375	22.25
Error (%)		17.64807163	7.283057851	8.05785
Standard Deviation (kPa)		0.464111307	0.426040393	0.509902

Measurement Set 5 (46 kPa)

Measurement Plane	Tilt/Pressure	Stiffness (kPa) at 30 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 45 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 60 mm
1	0° tilting without pressure	31	33	33.4
2	0° tilting without pressure	32.2	32.6	33.1
3	0° tilting without pressure	33	35.4	35.3
4	0° tilting without pressure	34.8	31.3	34.4

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Measurement Plane	Tilt/Pressure	Stiffness (kPa) at 30 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 45 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 60 mm
1	0° tilting with pressure	31	33.5	31.6
2	0° tilting with pressure	33	32.8	36.2
3	0° tilting with pressure	31	32.7	30.8
4	0° tilting with pressure	30.3	35.3	33.4
1	15° tilting without pressure	30.2	35.4	33.2
2	15° tilting without pressure	31.9	37.5	34.8
3	15° tilting without pressure	31.7	34.7	35.4
4	15° tilting without pressure	32.8	35	32.8
1	15° tilting with pressure	29.9	32.9	32.1
2	15° tilting with pressure	32.5	33.6	32.9
3	15° tilting with pressure	35.3	35.5	35.8
4	15° tilting with pressure	34.6	33.3	33.4
1	−15° tilting without pressure	32.5	37.1	35.2
2	−15° tilting without pressure	33.1	35.7	33.4
3	−15° tilting without pressure	32.5	38.6	33.9
4	−15° tilting without pressure	35	34.4	32.5
1	−15° tilting with pressure	31.9	33.7	34.9
2	−15° tilting with pressure	33.6	33.3	35.1
3	−15° tilting with pressure	32.9	35	35.4
4	−15° tilting with pressure	31.5	32.4	38.5

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Measurement Plane	Tilt/Pressure	Stiffness (kPa) at 30 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 45 mm	Stiffness (kPa) at 60 mm
Mean Stiffness (kPa)		32.425	34.3625	34.0625
Error (%)		29.51086957	25.29891304	25.9511
Standard Deviation (kPa)		1.472879832	1.730802439	1.652224

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

3 System Overview

Use this section to acquaint yourself with the ultrasound system and its components.

System Capabilities

The Affiniti series diagnostic ultrasound systems are high-resolution systems intended for general imaging, interventional radiology, cardiology, urology, vascular, OB/GYN applications, and analysis. You can use the system for 2D, 3D, 4D, freehand and automated 3D, M-mode, Doppler, and Color imaging. You can also perform Duplex and Triplex. Stress echocardiography is standard on the system, and QLAB Advanced Quantification Software Q-Apps are available as options. The system supports a wide range of transducers. The system provides measurement tools, analysis options, and DICOM network capabilities.

The system cart is ergonomically designed to be both highly mobile and adjustable for a range of users and operating conditions.

Measurements

The system provides tools and controls for measuring distance, area, and volume. Additionally, the following application-specific tools are available:

- 2D Trace By Points
- 3D Volume
- Aliasing Velocity
- Generic Angle
- Heart Rate
- High Q analysis
- Hip Angle
- Percent Reduction
- Simpson's Method

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- Time/Slope
- Velocity
- Volume Flow

After you perform measurements, the system makes the pertinent calculations and organizes the measurements, calculations, and patient information into a patient report.

For more information, see the *Help*.

Transducer Types

Available transducer types include sector array, linear array, curved array, nonimaging Doppler, endocavity, intraoperative, transesophageal, volume, and xMATRIX array.

Indications for Use and Supporting Transducers

WARNING

Unless the transducer used is indicated for ophthalmic use, the device is not intended for ophthalmic use or any application that causes the acoustic beam to pass through the eye.

WARNING

Intraoperative transducers used in animal studies should not be used on humans. Intraoperative transducers used in human studies should not be used on animals. Transducer disinfection procedures for cross-usage between animals and humans have not been validated.

CAUTION

United States federal law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a physician.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Use only transducers that are approved by Philips for use with your Philips ultrasound system.

The following are the indications for use for the Affiniti systems and the transducers supporting each indication.

Transducers and Supported Indications for Use for Affiniti Series Systems

Transducer	Indications for Use
3D9-3v	Fetal/OB, Other: Fetal Echo, Other: GYN, Other: Urology, Transvaginal
BP10-5ec	Other: Urology, Transrectal
C5-1	Abdominal, Fetal/OB, Other: Fetal Echo, Other: GYN, Other: Urology, Pediatric, Peripheral Vessel
C6-2	Abdominal, Fetal/OB, Other: Fetal Echo, Other: GYN, Other: Urology, Pediatric
C8-5	Abdominal, Cerebral Vascular, Neonatal Cephalic, Pediatric, Peripheral Vessel
C9-2	Abdominal, Fetal/OB, Musculoskeletal (Conventional), Other: Fetal Echo, Other: GYN, Other: Urology, Pediatric, Peripheral Vessel
C9-4v	Fetal/OB, Other: Fetal Echo, Other: GYN, Other: Urology, Transvaginal
C10-3v	Fetal/OB, Other: Fetal Echo, Other: GYN, Other: Urology, Transvaginal
C10-4ec	Fetal/OB, Other: Fetal Echo, Other: GYN, Other: Urology, Peripheral Vessel, Transrectal, Transvaginal
D2cwc	Cardiac Adult, Cardiac Pediatric
D2tcd	Adult Cephalic, Cerebral Vascular
D5cwc	Cerebral Vascular, Peripheral Vessel
eL18-4	Abdominal, Cerebral Vascular, Fetal/OB, Musculoskeletal (Conventional), Musculoskeletal (Superficial), Pediatric, Peripheral Vessel, Small Organ (Breast, Thyroid, Testicle)
eL18-4 EMT	Abdominal, Cerebral Vascular, Fetal/OB, Musculoskeletal (Conventional), Musculoskeletal (Superficial), Pediatric, Peripheral Vessel, Small Organ (Breast, Thyroid, Testicle)

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Transducer	Indications for Use
L12-3	Abdominal, Cerebral Vascular, Intraoperative (Vascular), Musculoskeletal (Conventional), Musculoskeletal (Superficial), Neonatal Cephalic, Peripheral Vessel, Small Organ (Breast, Thyroid, Testicle)
L12-3ERGO	Abdominal, Cerebral Vascular, Intraoperative (Vascular), Musculoskeletal (Conventional), Musculoskeletal (Superficial), Neonatal Cephalic, Peripheral Vessel, Small Organ (Breast, Thyroid, Testicle)
L12-4	Abdominal, Cerebral Vascular, Fetal/OB, Musculoskeletal (Conventional), Musculoskeletal (Superficial), Neonatal Cephalic, Pediatric, Peripheral Vessel, Small Organ (Breast, Thyroid, Testicle)
L12-5 50	Abdominal, Cerebral Vascular, Fetal/OB, Musculoskeletal (Conventional), Musculoskeletal (Superficial), Pediatric, Peripheral Vessel, Small Organ (Breast, Thyroid, Testicle)
L15-7io	Cerebral Vascular, Intraoperative (Cardiac), Intraoperative (Vascular), Musculoskeletal (Conventional), Musculoskeletal (Superficial), Pediatric, Peripheral Vessel, Small Organ (Breast, Thyroid, Testicle)
L18-5	Abdominal, Cerebral Vascular, Fetal/OB, Musculoskeletal (Conventional), Musculoskeletal (Superficial), Pediatric, Peripheral Vessel, Small Organ (Breast, Thyroid, Testicle)
mC7-2	Abdominal, Pediatric, Peripheral Vessel
S4-2	Abdominal, Adult Cephalic, Cardiac Adult, Cardiac Pediatric
S5-1	Abdominal, Adult Cephalic, Cardiac Adult, Cardiac Pediatric, Fetal/OB, Other: Fetal Echo, Pediatric, Peripheral Vessel
S7-3t	Cardiac Adult, Cardiac Pediatric, Transesophageal (Cardiac)
S8-3	Cardiac Adult, Cardiac Pediatric, Fetal/OB, Neonatal Cephalic, Pediatric
S8-3t	Cardiac Adult, Cardiac Pediatric, Transesophageal (Cardiac)
S12-4	Cardiac Adult, Cardiac Pediatric, Neonatal Cephalic, Pediatric
V6-2	Abdominal, Fetal/OB, Other: Fetal Echo

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Transducer	Indications for Use
V9-2	Abdominal, Fetal/OB, Other: Fetal Echo, Other: GYN
VL13-5	Abdominal, Cerebral Vascular, Fetal/OB, Musculoskeletal (Conventional), Musculoskeletal (Superficial), Pediatric, Peripheral Vessel, Small Organ (Breast, Thyroid, Testicle)
X5-1	Abdominal, Adult Cephalic, Cardiac Adult, Cardiac Pediatric, Pediatric
X7-2t	Cardiac Adult, Transesophageal (Cardiac)
X8-2t	Cardiac Adult, Transesophageal (Cardiac)

Contraindications

None known.

Image Acquisition and Review

You can acquire and review single images and cineloop sequences. Images and cineloop sequences can be stored on DVDs, CDs, or USB devices, or sent over a network to an archive server or a printer.

Stress Echo capabilities also use the ability to acquire and review image loops. Stress Echo protocols of up to 10 stages are used to assess cardiac wall motion at various heart rates.

Peripheral devices are available for recording images and exams. You can connect a black-and-white image printer or a color image printer. You can also connect a report printer.

Patient Data Protection

The data security feature, if enabled on your system, limits access to previously stored patient data and images. To gain access to such data, you must first log on to the system using a password. When you are finished using the system, you can log off manually, or you can simply shut down the system, which logs you off automatically. The system stores a record of each user logon.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

This data protection feature can be used to help meet the requirements of the U.S. Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA).

For more information on protecting patient data, see “System Security” on page 207.

System Options

In addition to the standard features available in the system, other features are available as purchasable licensed options.

To add licensed options to your system, you purchase them from your Philips representative. Once purchased, they are installed in your system by a Philips field service engineer.

Imaging Options

The following are purchasable imaging options. Some options require specific transducers and applications.

NOTE

The elastography feature is available only in selected regions. For information specific to your region, contact your local Philips representative.

- 3D/4D (mechanical transducers)
- 3D Fetal Echo STIC
- aReveal
- Auto Doppler Optimization
- Color for 3D imaging
- Contrast
- Compression (strain) elastography

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- ElastPQ (shear wave elastography)
- ElastQ Imaging Curved (shear wave elastography)
- ElastQ Imaging Linear (shear wave elastography)
- Exam protocols
- FlexVue
- Freehand 3D
- GlassVue
- iSCAN Intelligent Optimization
- Live 3D, Full Volume, and Live xPlane imaging (xMATRIX transducers only)
- MicroFlow Imaging
- Panoramic 2D imaging
- Physio
- Stress Echo protocols
- Tissue Doppler Imaging (TDI)
- TrueVue

Connectivity Capabilities

The following features are standard:

- Image and waveform export to removable media
- Printing to DICOM printers
- Printing to local printers
- Printing report pages
- Wireless DICOM transfer

Additionally, the Basic Connectivity purchasable option includes these features:

- DICOM Networking
- Image and waveform export to network storage servers

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- DICOM Modality Worklist
- DICOM Performed Procedure Step (PPS)
- DICOM Storage Commit (SC)
- DICOM Structured Reporting (SR)
- DICOM Query/Retrieve
- Digital Navigation Link (DNL)

QLAB Advanced Quantification Software Options

The following QLAB Q-Apps are supported for use on your ultrasound system.

NOTE

The Elastography Quantification Q-App is not available in the United States.

NOTE

The Elastography Analysis Q-App is available only in the United States.

Affiniti CVx Systems

- 3D Auto MV Assessment (3D Auto MV)
- Auto 2D Quantification (a2DQ)
- Auto Cardiac Motion Quantification (aCMQ)
- AutoStrain Left Atrium (AutoStrain LA)
- AutoStrain Left Ventricle (AutoStrain LV)
- AutoStrain Right Ventricle (AutoStrain RV)
- Cardiac 3D Quantification (Cardiac 3DQ)

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- Cardiac 3D Quantification Advanced (Cardiac 3DQ Advanced)
- Intima Media Thickness (IMT)
- MicroVascular Imaging (MVI)
- Mitral Valve Navigator (MVN)
- Region of Interest Quantification (ROI)
- Strain Quantification (SQ)

Affiniti 70 Systems

- 3D Auto MV Assessment (3D Auto MV)
- Auto 2D Quantification (a2DQ)
- Auto Cardiac Motion Quantification (aCMQ)
- AutoStrain Left Ventricle (AutoStrain LV)
- Cardiac 3D Quantification (Cardiac 3DQ)
- Cardiac 3D Quantification Advanced (Cardiac 3DQ Advanced)
- Elastography Analysis (EA)
- Elastography Quantification (EQ)
- Fetal Heart Navigator (FHN)
- General Imaging 3D Quantification (GI3DQ)
- Intima Media Thickness (IMT)
- MicroVascular Imaging (MVI)
- Mitral Valve Navigator (MVN)
- Region of Interest Quantification (ROI)
- Strain Quantification (SQ)
- Vascular Plaque Quantification (VPQ)

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Affiniti 50 Systems

- Auto 2D Quantification (a2DQ)
- Auto Cardiac Motion Quantification (aCMQ)
- AutoStrain Left Ventricle (AutoStrain LV)
- Elastography Analysis (EA)
- Elastography Quantification (EQ)
- Fetal Heart Navigator (FHN)
- General Imaging 3D Quantification (GI3DQ)
- Intima Media Thickness (IMT)
- MicroVascular Imaging (MVI)
- Region of Interest Quantification (ROI)
- Strain Quantification (SQ)
- Vascular Plaque Quantification (VPQ)

Affiniti 30 Systems

- Auto 2D Quantification (a2DQ)
- AutoStrain Left Ventricle (AutoStrain LV)
- Elastography Analysis (EA)
- Elastography Quantification (EQ)
- General Imaging 3D Quantification (GI3DQ)
- Intima Media Thickness (IMT)

Stress Echocardiography

Stress Echocardiography (Stress Echo) is a protocol-driven study that allows a cardiologist to assess cardiac wall motion at various heart rates by acquiring views of the heart at different stages of the study. Stress Echo includes these Philips protocols:

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- Exercise 2-Stage
- Exercise 3-Stage
- Pharmacological 4-Stage
- Quantitative 4-Stage
- Wall Motion and Contrast

You can create custom presets based on those protocols.

Data Security

A data security feature is available to help maintain the confidentiality of archived patient files. For more information, see “System Security” on page 207.

The following data security options are also purchasable:

- **Government Security**: If the **Government Security** licensed option is purchased and enabled, the **Remote Access Configuration** options described in “Configuring Remote Access” on page 163 are not available.
- **SafeGuard**: Protects the system against malware and viruses by preventing unauthorized software from running on the system. When **SafeGuard** detects malware (unauthorized software or an attempt to change software installed on the system), the  icon appears in the tools and icons area on the display. To view details, select the  icon.
- **Security Plus**: Allows you to configure user management, audit logging, and data encryption.

PercuNav Image Fusion and Interventional Navigation

You can use the PercuNav Image Fusion and Interventional Navigation option to fuse diagnostic images and guide tracked instruments to targets that have been defined by a physician. The target can be indicated either pre-procedurally or intra-procedurally, either using images or relative to an indicated position on the patient.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

The PercuNav option may not be available in all countries. Check with your local representative.

Features include the following:

- Multiple applications: The PercuNav option supports multiple applications and can be used for ablations, biopsies, and other diagnostic and guidance procedures.
- Multiple modalities: The PercuNav option works with images from multiple modalities, including but not limited to CT, MR, PET, and ultrasound.

Instructions for using the PercuNav option are in the *PercuNav User Manual*.

NOTE

The PercuNav option is a purchasable licensed option. Its user interface is available only when the PercuNav license is enabled.

Anatomical Intelligence for Breast

The Anatomical Intelligence for Breast (AI Breast) option helps you perform a breast ultrasound exam by providing information about the location of the transducer in relationship to patient anatomy landmarks that you assign. During the scan of the patient, a graphic representing the breast shows the paths that have been swept by the transducer.

Instructions for using AI Breast are in the *Anatomical Intelligence for Breast (AI Breast) User Manual*.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

AI Breast is a purchasable licensed option. Its user interface is available only when the AI Breast license is enabled.

System Components

The system is housed in an ergonomic cart. Adjustable components can be locked in place so the cart can be safely moved. The major components include the monitor, control module, On/Off control, DVD drive, peripheral bay, transducer receptacles, ECG/physio receptacles, USB ports, and brakes and steering locks.

System Components

1	Monitor
2	Articulating arm (optional on Affiniti 50 systems and Affiniti 30 systems)

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

3	On/Off control
4	ECG/physio receptacle
5	Peripheral bay
6	Doppler probe receptacle
7	Transducer cable management tray
8	Wheel lock and brake
9	Transducer receptacles
10	Control panel
11	Touch screen

Video Monitor

The system video monitor consists of a 54.6 cm (21.5 in) flat-panel display on an articulated mounting arm or a stationary post, depending on your system's configuration. The articulated mounting arm is adjustable to accommodate different operating positions and operator heights for the monitor. The articulated mounting arm can also be locked in position to protect the monitor when moving the system (see “Moving the System” on page 165).

Control Module

The control module includes two main components: the control panel and the touch screen.

The control panel contains the main imaging controls. These controls include buttons, knobs, TGC slide controls, and a trackball. For more information on the control module, see “System Controls” on page 182.

The touch screen, located above the control panel, displays controls used to select transducers, presets, and imaging modes, controls that are specific to the current operating mode, and soft key labels that change according to the current functions of the knobs and buttons on the control panel. It also lets you enter patient data, review and annotate images, perform measurements and calculations, and change setups.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Control Module

1	Touch screen
2	Control panel
3	TGC slide controls
4	Trackball

You can adjust the position of the control module vertically and side-to-side. You can also swivel the control module.

Voice Annotation Microphone

The voice annotation microphone allows you to record comments on a DVD. The microphone is in the monitor housing.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

On/Off (Power) Control

The ⏻ (On/Off) control is located on the control panel. When the system is off or in Sleep Mode, pushing this control brings the system into a fully operational state. Pushing this control again turns off the system.

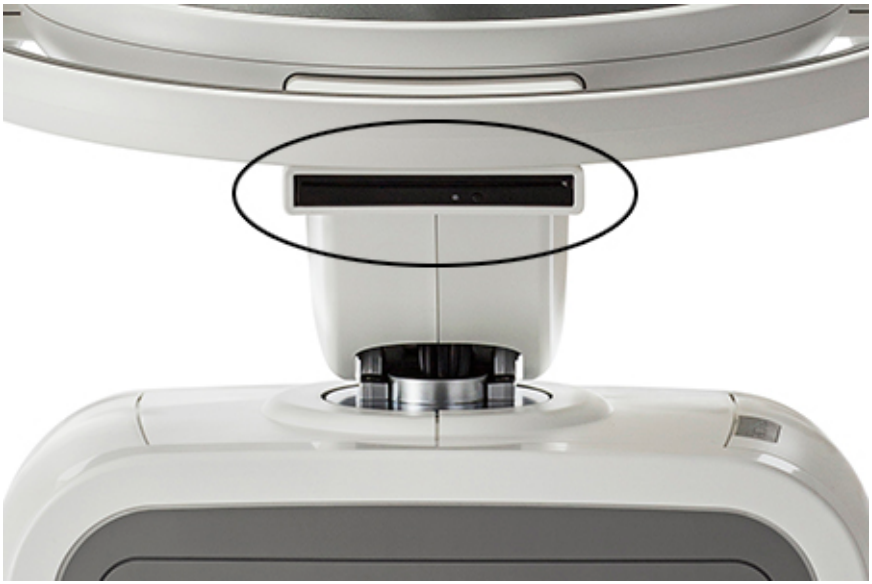
On/Off Control

Data Storage

You can store exam data and images onto removable media. Removable media includes USB storage devices, DVDs, and CDs. The optional DVD drive is located under the system handle. For more information, see “DVD, CD, and USB Devices” on page 226.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips



DVD Drive

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Data Port Locations

1	USB ports (1 on each side of the control panel, 2 behind the side panel)
2	Network port
3	External monitor port (DisplayPort)

NOTE

The availability of data ports in the side panel depends on your system's configuration.

Peripherals

The peripheral bay at the back of the system provides space for peripheral devices. Those devices can be a PercuNav system tray or a DVD recorder.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

If you use the PercuNav system, the PercuNav system tray occupies the entire peripheral bay. The PercuNav system may not be available in all countries. Check with your local representative.

Peripheral Bay

Small, on-cart, black-and-white image printers are also available. Those printers are installed on or under the left rear of the control module.

Transducers and Cable Managers

For information on transducers and cable management, see “Transducer Receptacles and Cable Management” on page 217.

Radio-Frequency Devices

Radio-frequency devices, such as USB wireless adapters, are used on your system to support wireless network connections. For information on wireless network connections and configuration, see the *Help* or “Configuring the System” on page 160. For information on the compliance requirements for radio-frequency devices, see “Wireless Network Radio-Frequency Emissions” on page 91.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

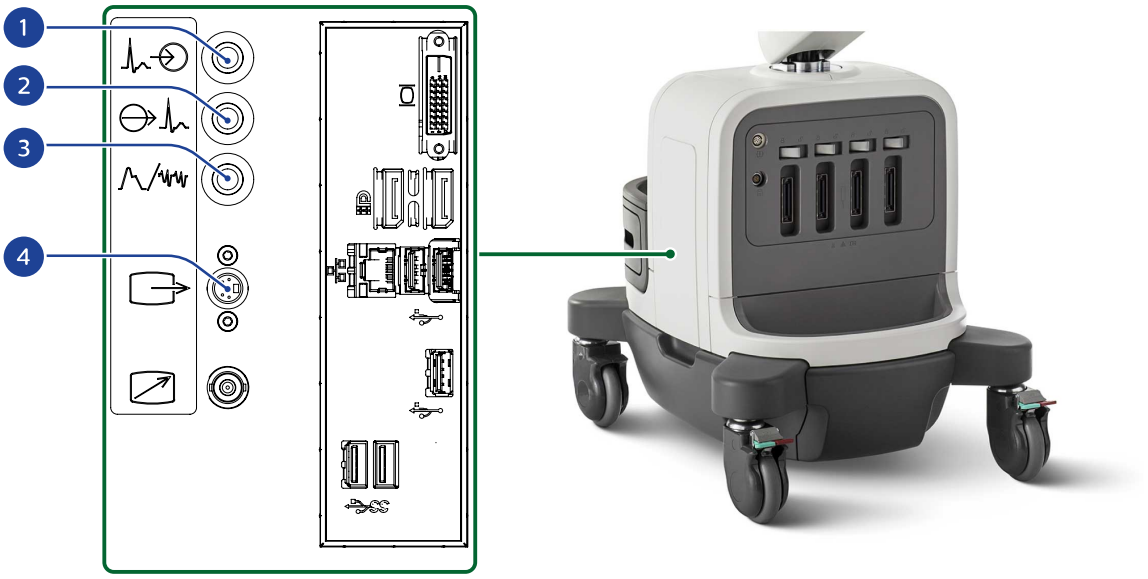
For assistance with the radio-frequency device, contact your Philips representative.

Physio (ECG) Receptacles

For physio support, your system includes input receptacles for ECG (for the connector location, see the figure in “Transducer Receptacles and Cable Management” on page 217), pulse, phono, respiration, and auxiliary signals.

NOTE

The availability of an S-VHS output port depends on your system's configuration.



ECG and Physio Receptacles

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

1	ECG In/Aux 1
2	ECG Out
3	Pulse/Phono/Aux 2
4	S-VHS output

Wheel Controls

All four wheels on the system cart swivel to aid in maneuvering the system. The front wheels have wheel controls that you can engage and disengage independently. Brakes help keep the cart stationary while in use.

For more information, see “Using the Wheel Controls” on page 177.

Wheel Controls

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4 Preparing the System

The information and procedures in this section will help you prepare the system for use. Preparations include connecting transducers and external devices, locking articulated components for moving, and ensuring that system operating requirements are met.

Connecting Devices

In addition to the devices installed in the system cart, the system supports external devices. These devices include printers, a barcode scanner, a foot switch, and a color monitor.

The system also supports a DVD recorder. This recorder is considered an external device, even when it is installed on the system. The DVD recorder can be installed before the system is shipped, or it can be installed later by your Philips representative.

WARNING

When using additional peripheral equipment powered from an electrical source other than the ultrasound system, the combination is considered to be a medical system. It is your responsibility to comply with IEC 60601-1 and test the system to those requirements. If you have questions, contact your Philips representative.

WARNING

Do not use nonmedical peripherals, such as report printers, within 1.5 m (5 ft) of a patient, unless the nonmedical peripherals receive power from an isolation transformer that meets medical safety standards, as defined by standard IEC 60601-1.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

All external devices and peripherals that you connect to the system must meet the safety standards defined by IEC 60601-1 or IEC 60950-1. This applies to all USB, HDMI, and serial input/output connections.

WARNING

Philips ultrasound systems are tested to the requirements of IEC 60601-1, with on-cart peripherals that are powered by the built-in system isolation. The system peripherals meet general electrical safety usage requirements.

WARNING

Off-cart devices connecting to the ultrasound system must comply with the applicable IEC or national standards, such as IEC 60601-1, IEC 60950, or the equivalent.

CAUTION

Using accessories, transducers, peripherals, or cables not supplied with the ultrasound system or recommended by Philips can affect the system in the form of increased emissions or decreased immunity to external EMI/EMC occurrences. Non-specified peripherals, and cables in some cases, can also increase leakage current or compromise the safety of the grounding scheme.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

CAUTION

If systems, transducers, and peripherals have been in an environment below 10°C (50°F), allow them to reach room temperature before connecting or turning them on. Allow 24 hours for complete normalization. Otherwise, condensation inside the devices could cause damage. If the device was only briefly exposed to temperatures below 10°C (50°F), then the time required for the device to return to room temperature could be significantly less than 24 hours.

NOTE

Any device that is not purchased from Philips or a Philips-authorized agent is not covered under a Philips service agreement or warranty.

Configuring Local Printers

WARNING

Multi-image prints made on small-size paper are intended only for reference and should not be used for diagnostic purposes. Text annotation and scaling markers may not be visible on such prints.

NOTE

Before adding a local printer, connect the printer to the ultrasound system.

You can add a local printer to the system and then, in the setups, associate it with either a touch screen control or an **Acquire** control. You can print only to a printer that has been selected. You can also change other printing parameters.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
3. Click **Acquisition/Capture**.
4. Click the **Archive/Printer** tab.
5. To assign a printer to an **Acquire** control, do the following:
   a. From the **Acquisition Type** list, select a type.
   b. Under **Destination(s)**, select a printer.
6. To assign a printer to a touch screen control, do the following:
   a. Under **Select a Touch Screen Button**, select the name of the control that you want to assign.
   b. Under **Destination(s) for the Button**, select a printer.
7. To exit the setups, touch **Close**.

Connecting the Foot Switch

The foot switch is available as an option.

1. Turn off the system.
2. Connect the foot switch cable to an available USB port on the system.

Connecting an External DVD Recorder

If your system has an S-Video receptacle (), you can connect the Sony HVO-550MD DVD Recorder to your ultrasound system as an external device.

CAUTION

Connect only USB devices, ECG connectors or plugs, and S-Video cables to the receptacles in the left-side panel.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

The external DVD recorder records from the ultrasound system; it does not provide playback on the system monitor. The DVD recorder must be installed with the Philips DVD recorder installation kit. (For the kit, contact your Philips representative.) If you connect this DVD recorder without the installation kit or connect any other DVD recorder, you must control it from the front panel controls on the DVD recorder.

1. Turn off the system and unplug the power cord from the power source.
2. Connect an S-Video cable between the S-Video input on the DVD recorder and the S-Video output  on the ultrasound system.
3. Connect the DVD recorder's power cord into the back of the DVD recorder, and plug the other end into an appropriate power source.
4. Turn on the DVD recorder, and then turn on the ultrasound system.

Connecting an External Monitor

WARNING

When using additional peripheral equipment powered from an electrical source other than the ultrasound system, the combination is considered to be a medical system. It is your responsibility to comply with IEC 60601-1 and test the system to those requirements. If you have questions, contact your Philips representative.

WARNING

Do not use nonmedical peripherals, such as report printers, within 1.5 m (5 ft) of a patient, unless the nonmedical peripherals receive power from an isolated power outlet on the Philips ultrasound system, or from an isolation transformer that meets medical safety standards, as defined by standard IEC 60601-1.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

You can connect a compatible external color monitor to the  receptacle on the rear panel of the system. This receptacle provides standard DisplayPort digital output. You also can connect an external analog monitor to the  (S-Video) receptacle, if available. A digital monitor connected to the DisplayPort receptacle provides the best-quality image. The power cord for the external monitor plugs directly into a wall socket.

NOTE

If you use an Insignia adapter to connect to an external color monitor, you must first turn on the monitor before you turn on the system.

For monitors and video projectors requiring other connectors, such as VGA or DVI, a converter is required. If your system is not configured for S-Video, an active DisplayPort to DVI/VGA/ HDMI adapter is required.

The DisplayPort output includes the entire display. The aspect ratio of the screen is 16:9. To display this properly, select the 16:10 or 16:9 mode on the monitor or projector, if available. Also, you may be able to adjust the horizontal and vertical image size controls to create the correct aspect ratio. You can best judge the aspect ratio by displaying the circle test pattern on the system.

The setups provide these outputs:

- **Full Screen, 1920x1080 (1080p)**: The full display, which is output at 60 frames per second on the DisplayPort connector. When this option is selected, you cannot use the S-Video output.
- **Image Area Only, 1024x768**: Outputs the region of interest of the image area to the S-Video connector in NTSC or PAL format (depending on the system setting).

The system provides connections for connecting an external monitor. The setups must be configured to operate the monitor.

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

3. Click **System Settings**, and then click the **Display** tab.
4. Do one of the following:
   - If you are connecting a monitor to the DisplayPort connector, for **External Video DisplayPort Format**, select **Image Area 1024x768** or **Full-Screen 1080p (S-Video Disabled)**.
   - If your system is configured for S-Video and you are connecting a monitor to the S-Video connector, for **External Video S-Video Format**, select **NTSC** or **PAL**.
5. To exit the setups, touch **Close**.

NOTE

Selecting **Full-Screen 1080p (S-Video Disabled)** disables the S-Video connector. The 1920 x 1080 resolution of 1080p is incompatible with S-Video.

External Printers

You can connect different external printers to your system.

WARNING

Images printed on a report printer are intended only for reference and should not be used for diagnostic purposes.

NOTE

The system uses the Brother Universal Print Driver, the Epson Universal Print Driver, the HP Universal Print Driver, and the Xerox Global Print Driver, which support additional printers not listed here. For the supported printers, see the manufacturer's website and search for "global print driver" or "universal print driver."

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Supported External Printers

Printer Type	Printer Manufacturers and Model Numbers
Black-and-white image printers	Sony UP-D898MD/SYN
Color image printers	Sony UP-D25MD/SYN

For more information, see “Configuring Local Printers” on page 155 and the “Printing” section in the *Help*.

Configuring the System

The ultrasound system is configured using the setups and **Philips SupportConnect**. The configuration items in **Philips SupportConnect** are intended for use by field service engineers and First Responder service providers. The system configuration items in **Philips SupportConnect** include network configuration, DICOM network settings, printer configuration, remote service and remote access, log files, and access to optional services.

Standard Network Support

The system supports standard network functions, which include printing to DICOM printers, local printers, and report printers. Additional network capabilities are available in the connectivity option.

DICOM Networking Option

The DICOM Networking option permits network transfer of image and report information to a DICOM storage server or a PACS server. The system conforms to the Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine (DICOM) standard, version 3.0. Centralized printers, print servers, network file servers, and review workstations that comply with the DICOM standard can take advantage of the DICOM Networking option.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

To ensure that all PACS servers can read DICOM data from your system, you can ask your PACS administrator to update the PACS software to recognize your system or you can configure the system model ID that is sent as part of DICOM export. For more information, see "Configuring the System Model ID for DICOM Exports" in the *Help*.

With the DICOM Networking option, you can store ultrasound images on DICOM-compatible file servers or storage devices and review them using a workstation. You can also print studies directly to a DICOM printer. Capabilities include support for DICOM services such as Modality Worklist, Performed Procedure Step, Storage Commit, and Query Retrieve.

The DICOM Networking option settings are usually obtained from a Philips field service engineer or a site administrator. To configure DICOM settings, press **Support** and click the **Network/DICOM** tab. After you select **Network/DICOM**, the options available to you depend upon the configuration of your system. The DICOM Networking option requires additional levels of setup.

Once the ultrasound system is configured, it remains that way through power cycles until you reconfigure it.

Configuring DNS Settings

If your system does not use Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) to specify the addresses of domain name servers, you must enter the domain name server (DNS) settings for your system before you connect your system to either a wired or wireless network. If you have questions, see your network administrator.

To configure a wired network or a wireless network, see the *Help*.

1. Press **Support**.
2. Click **Network/DICOM**.
3. Click **DNS Settings**.
4. If your network administrator specified DNS IP addresses, click **Use the Following DNS Server IP Addresses (In Order)** and add one or more DNS addresses.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

5. If your network administrator specified DNS suffixes, click **Append Given Name With One of the Following DNS Suffixes (In Order)** and add one or more DNS suffixes.
6. Click **Save**.
7. Close the **DNS Settings** tab.
8. To exit **Philips SupportConnect**, touch **Close**.

Connecting the System to a Network

To use connectivity features, the system must be connected to a network. The network receptacle on the system supports Gigabit, 10Base-T, and 100Base-T Ethernet LAN. A Philips field service engineer or your network administrator must configure the system for network connectivity.

For information on changing the network configuration for the system, see "System Administration" in the *Help*.

1. Turn off system power.
2. Connect one end of the provided network connection cable to the wall receptacle for your network.
3. Connect the other end of the cable to the network receptacle on the back of the system (or one of the network ports behind the side door).
4. Turn on the system.

Remote Access

The Remote Access feature is intended for use by a site administrator. It allows a Philips field service engineer to access your system remotely to run tests, to record system behavior, to conduct analysis, to monitor the system, and to download necessary software.

The  (Remote Access is Enabled) icon indicates that the Remote Access feature is active.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Configuring Remote Access

Before a Philips representative can remotely access your system, it must be configured to allow remote access. Typically, your Philips field service engineer configures the remote access. However, if your site uses a proxy server to access the Internet, and if your network administrator changes the proxy server location or password, you need to reconfigure the remote access. You have full control over the remote access settings, and no one can access the system remotely without your permission.

1. Press **Support**.
2. Click the **Remote Services** tab.
3. Click **Remote Connection Tool**.
4. Click **Configure Proxy**.
5. Enter the information for the proxy server.
6. Click **Connect**.
7. If the proxy server settings are correct, the **OK** message appears. If the test settings are incorrect, or the test fails, the **Failed to Connect** message appears.
8. To exit **Philips SupportConnect**, touch **Close**.

Enabling a Remote Access Session

NOTE

If the **Government Security** licensed option is purchased and enabled, **Remote Access Configuration** options are not available.

1. Press **Support**.
2. Click the **Remote Services** tab.
3. Click **Remote Access Configuration**.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4. Select one of the following:
   - If you want the remote user to have full control over your ultrasound system, click **Enable Remote Access**.
   - If you want the remote user to be able to observe but not control your ultrasound system, click **Enable Remote View**.
5. If **Remote Session** is disabled, click **Disabled** to enable remote sessions.
6. Read the **Enable Remote Connection Disclaimer**. Do one of the following:
   - If you accept the conditions, click **Accept** to enable remote access or remote view.
   - If you do not accept the conditions, click **Reject**. Remote access remains disabled.
7. To schedule remote access to be available only for a specified period, click **Schedule Session Later**, and enter the start and end date and time.
8. Read the **Schedule Remote Connection Disclaimer**. Do one or more of the following:
   - If you accept the conditions, click **Accept** to schedule the session, and then set the start and end dates and times for the remote session.
   - If you do not accept the conditions, click **Reject**. The session will not be scheduled.
   - To enable the remote access session to start without requiring the acceptance from the system user, select **Automatically Accept Incoming Connections**, and then click **Schedule Remote Access**.
   - To enable a remote view session, click **Schedule Remote View**, and then set the start and end dates and times for the remote view.
9. To exit **Philips SupportConnect**, touch **Close**.

NOTE

You can disconnect the remote access session at any time during or after a session by clicking the  (Remote Access Session is Active) icon.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Moving the System

Observe the following warnings and cautions before moving the system.

WARNING

Be aware of the wheels on the system cart, especially when moving the system. The system could cause injury to you or others if it rolls over feet or into shins. Use caution when going up or down ramps.

WARNING

When attempting to overcome an obstacle, do not push the system from either side with excessive force, which could cause the system to tip over.

WARNING

Position external peripheral devices away from the system. Ensure that they are secure. Do not stack them on the system.

WARNING

When positioning the monitor, move it carefully to avoid pinching hands or extremities against other objects, such as a bed rail.

WARNING

Never park the system on an incline.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

Use caution when going up or down inclines. Improperly handled, the system can cause injury to you or others.

WARNING

If you park the system on a floor that is tilted 10 degrees or more and set the caster brakes, one of the braked casters might not be touching the floor, which can cause the system to move.

WARNING

The brakes are intended as a convenience. To increase cart security, use wheel chocks when the system is parked.

WARNING

To avoid injury, Philips recommends against lifting the system cart.

WARNING

Before moving the system, move the control panel to the lowest, centered position, and lock the monitor. When extended, the monitor could swing out during transport, causing injury or equipment damage.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

Before wheeling the system over long distances on rough terrain, lock the monitor arm by pressing its articulating sections together, and secure the arm with the transport strap provided with the system. Otherwise, the monitor arm could swing out, causing injury or damage to the monitor and system.

WARNING

Before transporting the system in a vehicle, move the control panel to the lowest position, lock the monitor arm by pressing its articulating sections together, and secure the arm with the transport strap provided with the system. Otherwise, the monitor arm could swing out, causing injury or damage to the monitor and system.

WARNING

To avoid damaging the monitor, follow the mechanical safety guidelines provided in this manual. If the monitor is damaged, contact your authorized service representative before using the system.

CAUTION

Before moving the system, ensure that the brakes are completely released by fully lifting the brake lever. Otherwise, the engaged brake pad can damage the rubber casters on the wheels.

CAUTION

Before moving the system, ensure that the system is secured for transport. This includes ensuring that the monitor is secured, to prevent monitor damage during transport.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

CAUTION

Ensure that the cables for all patient-applied parts are secure before moving the system. Use the cable management system to ensure that transducer cables are protected from damage.

CAUTION

Do not roll the system over transducer cables or power cables.

CAUTION

When transporting the system in a vehicle, avoid exposing the monitor to direct sunlight. Exposure to direct sunlight can permanently damage the monitor.

Preparing and Moving the System

CAUTION

When shipping the system, make sure the batteries are inserted upside down to prevent electrical discharge.

1. Press ⏻ to turn off the system or press ☾ to initiate Sleep Mode.
2. Engage the wheel brakes.
3. Disconnect all external cables, including those to power, network, and external devices.
4. Secure all cables, transducers, and accessories so that they do not interfere with the wheels.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

5. If your system has an articulated mounting arm, lock the monitor arm by pressing the articulating sections of the arm together.

Locking the Monitor Arm

6. Attach the transport strap (provided with the system) to the monitor arm at the point closest to the monitor.
7. Release the wheel brakes.
8. Move the cart using the front handle.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Front Handle

Positioning the System in Confined Spaces

1. Release the wheel brakes.
2. Move the system in any direction using the front handle.
3. When the system is in position, set the wheel brakes.

Setting Up After Moving

CAUTION

If the system behaves abnormally after moving, contact your Philips representative immediately. The components are installed securely and can withstand considerable shock; however, excessive shock can cause a system failure.

1. With the system in position, set the brakes, connect the power, network, and other cables from the system to the appropriate wall receptacles.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

2. Release the monitor from its locked transport position.
3. Position the monitor where you want it.
4. Squeeze the release lever on the front handle and position the control module to the position you want.
5. Press the ⏻ (On/Off) control to turn on the system.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

5 Using the System

The topics that follow will help you understand and use the features of the system.

Turning the System On and Off

The (On/Off) control is on the upper left section of the control panel. The lighting of the control changes to indicate its status. The different indicators are described in the following table.

You can set the system to display a shutdown-confirmation dialog box after is pressed (see “Enabling Shutdown Confirmation” on page 175).

Power Status and Indicators

System Status	Power Cord Status	Power Control Indicator	Sleep Control Indicator
Power off	Disconnected	Unlit	Unlit
Power off	Connected[2]	Lit white	Unlit
Power on	Connected[2]	Lit green	Lit white
Sleep Mode on[1]	Disconnected	Blinking amber	Unlit
Sleep Mode on[1]	Connected[2]	Blinking green	Unlit

1. Applicable only to systems with an installed, charged battery.
2. When connected, the system is energized and is charging an installed battery. For battery status, see “Battery Indicators” on page 206.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

CAUTION

If you press and hold the (On/Off) control to force the system to shut down, you will have to wait longer than usual to use your system the next time you turn it on. You may also corrupt files, which can result in an inoperative system or the loss of patient data. Wait 90 seconds (or 3 minutes if DICOM activity is occurring) before forcing the system to shut down.

CAUTION

The battery is used to ensure quick system startup and easy movement of the system only. You cannot perform scans while in battery mode.

NOTE

The system must be connected to a wall outlet to be used for imaging.

NOTE

If battery power is unavailable or disconnected (indicated by the  (No Battery Power) icon), or if the battery charge level is critically low (indicated by the  (Low Battery Power) icon), connect the system power cord to a wall outlet.

1. When the system is off, press the (On/Off) control to turn it on.
2. When the system is on, close all dialog boxes by selecting **Close** or **Done**, end all exams to avoid losing exam data, and then press the (On/Off) control to turn it off. A confirmation message appears briefly on the display immediately before the system turns off.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

3. If the system does not turn off after 90 seconds (or 3 minutes if DICOM activity is occurring), press and hold the (On/Off) control for 7 to 10 seconds to force the system to turn off.
4. To break the connection from the main power supply, remove the ultrasound system plug from the wall outlet.

Enabling Shutdown Confirmation

You can set the system to display a shutdown-confirmation dialog box after the (On/Off) control is pressed.

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
3. Click **System Settings**, and then click the **Display** tab.
4. Under **Control Panel Power Button**, select **Confirm Shutdown**.
5. Click **Close**.

Setting the System Time and Date

The system includes a clock/calendar function, which displays the time and date on the imaging display, and provides a time stamp on patient studies and acquired images.

The system automatically adjusts the date for leap years and can be configured to update for daylight saving time automatically. It does not automatically set the time zone.

NOTE

The system time and date cannot be set when a study is active. Philips recommends that you check the system time and date periodically before a study, and set the correct time and date, if necessary.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

If you change the system date while a study is paused, existing results for date-dependent calculations in the paused study are not recalculated by the system at any time.

NOTE

When you enter invalid characters in the time and date setups on the **Header** tab of **System Settings**, some characters are displayed and then erased, but others are not displayed at all. An invalid date may be displayed in the setups but not saved when you close the setups. After changing a date and exiting the setups, always check the date on the imaging display.

NOTE

This system supports the Network Time Protocol (NTP), which keeps your system's time accurate by synching with the NTP server. To activate this feature, your site administrator must create a connection to an NTP server. For instructions, see the *Help*.

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
3. Click **System Settings** and then click the **Header** tab.
4. In **Set Time**, select a **Format** (**12 hours** or **24 hours**), click the time in the **Time** box to select it, and then use the number keys to enter the correct setting. Select **Am** or **Pm**, if necessary.
5. In **Set Date**, select a **Format**, click the **Date** to select it, and then use the number keys to enter the correct setting.
6. In **Time Zone**, select a time zone. And if you want to, select **Automatically Adjust Clock for Daylight Saving Time**.
7. Click **Close**.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

8. After you exit the setups, verify the date and time on the imaging display.
9. If you changed the system date, to ensure that the system uses the correct date for all OB calculations, restart the system.

Using the Wheel Controls

WARNING

Never park the system on an incline.

WARNING

The brakes are intended as a convenience. To increase cart security, use wheel chocks when the system is parked.

All four wheels on the system cart swivel to aid in maneuvering the system. The front wheels have wheel controls that you can engage and disengage independently. Brakes help keep the cart stationary while in use.

- To engage the steering lock, press the green lever.
- To engage the front brake, press the red lever.
- To release both the steering lock and the front brake, press the gray lever.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Wheel Controls

Monitor Adjustments

CAUTION

To avoid damaging the flat-panel display in the monitor, do not operate it in direct sunlight.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

The monitor is mounted on an articulated arm or a stationary post, depending on your system's configuration. The monitor can be positioned vertically and in an arc from side to side. The articulated arm can be locked for moving the system. You can adjust the brightness of the monitor image to compensate for ambient light. You can also change the default brightness setting for the monitor.

Positioning the Monitor

You can adjust the position of the monitor to suit different operating positions and operator heights.

1. If the monitor is mounted on an articulated arm, press the button on the articulation arm, just above the control panel, to release the monitor from its locked transport position.

Monitor Articulation Arm Button

2. Grasp the monitor firmly and do any of the following:
   - Tilt the monitor up and down.
   - Swivel the monitor left and right.
   - For a monitor mounted on an articulating arm, raise and lower the monitor.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Monitor Tints

In the setups, you can change the tint of the system display. The **Monitor Tint** setting affects only the appearance of images on the monitor; it does not affect saved or exported images.

The following tint settings are available:

- **0** provides the maximum dynamic range and most-balanced tint. Use it to match the look of the system display to a review station display that is set to the sRGB standard.
- **1** is balanced toward a blue tint, for users who prefer a cooler tint.
- **2** is balanced toward a brown tint, for users who prefer a warmer tint.
- **3** provides a balanced tint similar to **sRGB** but with an increase in the color brightness.
- **4** is balanced toward a blue tint, for users who prefer a tint cooler than Tint **1**. It is designed to increase overall image contrast, which may influence image quality perception without making the image too bright.

NOTE

Rendered 3D volumes are particularly susceptible to changes in display tint. Some clinicians prefer the following settings for viewing 3D volumes: set **Default Monitor Tint** to **1** or **2** and set **Default Monitor Brightness** to **1**.

Changing the Monitor Tint

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
3. Click **System Settings**, and then click the **Display** tab.
4. Select the appropriate **Default Monitor Tint** setting.
5. Click **Close**.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Temporarily Changing the Monitor Tint

You can also change the monitor tint temporarily, if a transducer is connected to the system.

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, turn **Monitor Tint** to the setting that you want.

Changing the Monitor Brightness

You can change the default brightness of the monitor image in the setups. The system uses this default value to set monitor brightness each time the system is turned on.

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
3. Click **System Settings**, and then click the **Display** tab.
4. Select a setting for **Default Monitor Brightness** from **1** (darkest) to **7** (lightest).
5. Click **Close**.

Temporarily Changing the Monitor Brightness

You can also change the monitor brightness temporarily, if a transducer is connected to the system.

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, turn **Monitor Brightness** to the setting that you want.

Changing the Monitor Black Level

You can set the default monitor black level. Setting **1** provides the largest contrast ratio and the greatest display of dynamic range. Higher black levels more closely match the contrast ratio of the review display and improve off-cart image consistency.

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
3. Click **System Settings**, and then click the **Display** tab.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4. Select a setting for **Default Monitor Black Level** from **1** (darkest) to **6** (lightest).
5. Click **Close**.

Temporarily Changing the Monitor Black Level

You can also change the monitor black level temporarily, if a transducer is connected to the system.

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, turn **Monitor Black Level** to the setting that you want.

Automatic Display Dimming

To preserve monitor life and prevent burned-in display artifacts, the system automatically dims the display after more than 2 hours of operation with no control changes. The system restores full brightness as soon as you use any system control.

System Controls

System controls are on the control panel and the touch screen.

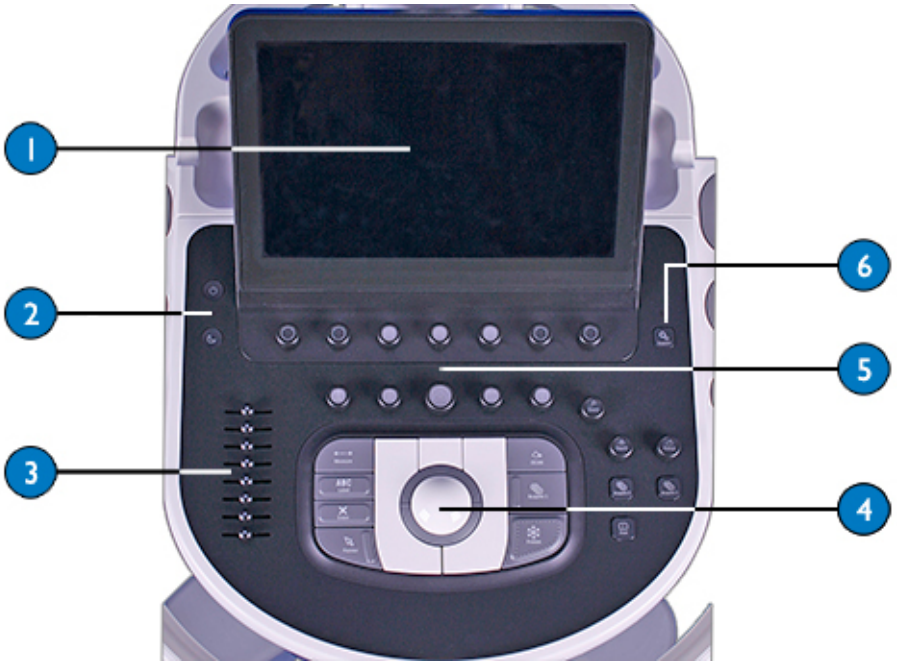
Control Panel

The control panel contains the main imaging controls. These controls include buttons, knobs, TGC slide controls, and a trackball.

The touch screen, located above the control panel, displays controls used to select transducers, presets, and imaging modes; controls that are specific to the current operating mode; and soft key labels that change according to the current functions of the knobs and buttons on the control panel. It also lets you enter patient data, review and annotate images, perform measurements and calculations, and change setups. In some imaging modes, the touch screen also includes LGC (lateral gain compensation) controls.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips



Control Panel

1	Touch screen
2	Power and Sleep Mode controls
3	TGC slide controls
4	Trackball
5	Soft key and mode controls
6	Control for access to **Philips SupportConnect**

NOTE

TGC and LGC controls are also available on the touch screen for some imaging modes.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Positioning the Control Panel

You can raise, lower, and swivel the control module to suit different operating positions and operator heights. To adjust the height of the monitor and control panel, squeeze the levers in the handle, and then move it up or down or swivel it.

Control Module Adjustment Levers

Adjusting Control Panel Brightness

The control panel and touch screen brightness controls in the setups allow you to adjust the brightness of the control panel and touch screen to compensate for changes in ambient light.

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
3. Click **System Settings**, and then click the **Display** tab.
4. Select a setting for **Default Control Panel Brightness**.
5. Click **Close**.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Temporarily Changing Control Panel Brightness

You can also change the control panel brightness temporarily.

Touch **Utilities**, and then turn **CP Brightness** to select your preferred brightness level.

Acquire Controls

You can configure the **Acquire 1**, **Acquire 2**, and **Acquire 3** controls for a variety of acquisition functions and image destinations.

Configurable Functions and Image Destinations for Acquire Controls

Acquire Controls Functions	Local Printer	Network Printer (Including DICOM)	Storage Server	External Printer
Acquire Loop	--	--	X	--
Acquire Frame	X	X	X	X
Acquire Frame (frozen image) or Loop (live imaging)	X (frame only)	X (frame only)	X	--
Print to Configured Printer	X	X	--	--
DVR Record/Pause	--	--	--	--

For more information, see “Configuring Local Printers” on page 155 and the “Printing” section in the *Help*.

Configuring Acquire Controls

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
3. Click **Acquisition/Capture**, and then click the **Archive/Printer** tab.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4. For each **Acquire** control, select a function from the **Acquisition Type** menu and then click a destination in the **Destination(s)** list. You can assign multiple destinations to each **Acquire** control.
5. When you are finished, click **Close**.

For information about configuring acquisition and capture settings, printing images or clips, or adding images to a report, see the *Help*.

Setting the Depth Control

The **System Settings** display in the setups provides an option for you to select how the **Depth** control responds when you turn it.

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
3. Click **System Settings**, and then click the **Mode** tab.
4. Under **Depth Control**, do one of the following:
   - To increase depth when the control is turned clockwise, select **Increase Clockwise**.
   - To increase depth when the control is turned counterclockwise, select **Increase Counter Clockwise**.
5. Click **Close**.

Specifying Freeze Actions

You can specify that the system automatically launch measurement or analysis tools (with or without calipers), the touch screen keyboard, annotations, or body markers when you press **Freeze**.

You can configure the freeze actions separately by application. For example, you can specify that the **Calc Package** touch screen appears when you press **Freeze** in an **OB** exam, but that the **Label** touch screen appears when you press **Freeze** in an **Abdominal** exam.

Freeze actions are disabled when:

- An exam protocol is being recorded or is running.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- High Q measurements are active.
- Q-Apps are running.
- PercuNav Image Fusion and Interventional Navigation is active.

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
3. Click **System Settings**, and then click the **Display** tab.
4. In the **Freeze Key Launches This Touch Screen** area, select a behavior from the **Launch Touch Screen and Status** menu for one or more applications.

Touch Screen

The touch screen, located above the control panel, displays controls that are used to select transducers, applications, and imaging modes; controls that are specific to the current operating mode; and soft key labels that change according to the current functions of the knobs and buttons on the control panel.

For more information, see the following:

- "Touch Screen Layout" on page 187
- "Touch Screen Layout for Advanced Cardiac UI Option" on page 189
- "Touch Screen Controls" on page 190

Touch Screen Layout

The controls on the touch screen are organized by function.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Touch Screen

A	**Workflow area**: Contains tools that enable the major workflow activities for starting, performing, and completing an exam.
1	Transducer selection controls
2	Tools
B	**Tabs**: Contains mode-specific or application-specific controls in different tabs.
C	**Controls**: The main area of the touch screen, which shows the controls for the currently selected tab in the current mode or application.
3	Sub-mode controls: Displays controls that activate sub-modes within 2D imaging.
4	Grouping panel: Groups controls for **2D**, **3D**, and **View**.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

5	Page indicator: Touch the indicator to go to the next page of controls, or swipe the screen to move between pages.
D	**Soft key labels**: Displays the labels for the current functions of the soft key controls. Some modes and applications have two rows of labels, some have one row, while others have no soft key control labels.
6	General-purpose soft keys
7	Dynamic soft keys

Touch Screen Layout for Advanced Cardiac UI Option

The organization of the controls on the touch screen is based on your display settings. To select the controls that you want to appear on the first page of the touch screen, see “Customizing the Touch Screen for Cardiac Applications” on page 193.

Touch Screen for the Advanced Cardiac User Interface

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

A	**Workflow area**: Contains tools that enable the major workflow activities for starting, performing, and completing an exam.
1	Transducer selection controls
2	Tools
B	**Tabs**: Contains mode-specific or application-specific controls in different tabs.
C	**Controls**: The main area of the touch screen, which shows the controls for the currently selected tab in the current mode or application.
3	Controls area customizable in the setups.
4	Page indicator. To go to the next page, touch the indicator, the arrows, or between the indicator and the arrows. To move between pages, swipe the screen.
D	**Soft key labels**: Displays the labels for the current functions of the soft key controls.

Touch Screen Controls

The touch screen, located above the control panel, displays controls that are used to select transducers, applications, and imaging modes; controls that are specific to the current operating mode; and soft key labels that change according to the current functions of the knobs and buttons on the control panel.

The color and state of the backlight on the soft key controls and their labels indicates the status of controls and modes:

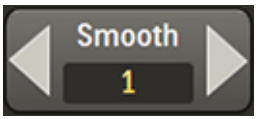
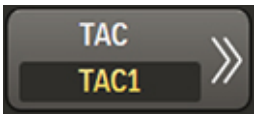
- White backlight: available but inactive
- Amber backlight: active
- Gray (off) backlight: unavailable

For multiuse controls, such as **Res/Spd**, touch the control to change the active function.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

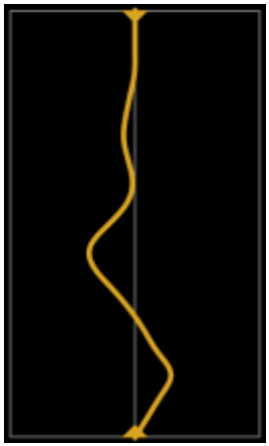
Philips

Types of Touch Screen Controls

Control Type	Action
	Touch a tab to display a different set of controls. Touching the tab in this example displays controls associated with **2D** mode.
	Touch to turn a function on or off. The control is amber when the function is on. In this example, XRES imaging is on.
	To change the value of the soft key control label displayed in amber, turn the associated soft key control. To change the active soft key control label, press the soft key control or touch the label displayed in white. You can disable press behavior for soft keys. See “Disabling Press Behavior for Soft Key Controls” on page 199.
	Touch either arrow to cycle through the control's available options.
	Touch the chevron to display the control's available options.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Control Type	Action
	With the Advanced Cardiac User Interface option, touch the page arrows to go to the next or previous page of controls during cardiac exams (alternative to touching the page indicator or swiping the screen).
	To adjust the TGC slider, touch and hold a spot on the line and move your finger to drag it into position. To reset the TGC curve, touch the center, gray line.

You can configure many acquisition-related touch screen controls to automatically send images to selected destinations, either at the end of an exam or after you print or acquire an image.

Image Destinations for Touch Screen Controls

Configurable Touch Screen Control	Local Printer	Network Printer (Including DICOM)	Storage Server
Acquire Report	X	X	X
Acquire Screen	X	X	X
Alt Print	X	--	--
Capture	--	--	X
Print Screen	X	X	X
Save 3D	--	--	X

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Configurable Touch Screen Control	Local Printer	Network Printer (Including DICOM)	Storage Server
Save 3D Clip	--	--	X
Save 4D	--	--	X
Save All	--	--	X
Save Clip	--	--	X
Save MPR Clips	--	--	X
Save Sweep	--	--	X

Configuring Touch Screen Controls

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
3. Click **Acquisition/Capture**, and then click the **Archive/Printer** tab.
4. Click a touch screen control to select it, and then click a destination in the **Destination(s) for the Button** list. You can assign multiple destinations to a touch screen control.
5. Repeat step 4 for each touch screen control that you want to configure.
6. When you are finished, click **Close**.

For information about configuring acquisition and capture settings, printing images or clips, or adding images to a report, see the *Help*.

Customizing the Touch Screen for Cardiac Applications

With the Advanced Cardiac UI option, you can select which controls appear on the first page of the touch screen during cardiac exams.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

On the **Display** tab of the **System Settings** setups, you can choose to display or hide the **Customization** tab on the **Utilities** tab.

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **Customization** tab, select the 2D and 3D controls, and the two 3D cropping tools that you want to appear on the first page of the touch screen. Unselected controls and cropping tools appear on the second page of the touch screen.

NOTE

ECG Lead and **Capture Type** will not appear on the second page of the touch screen if they are not selected. **ECG Lead** is always displayed on the **Physio** tab on the **Utilities** tab. **Capture Type** is always displayed on the **System** tab on the **Utilities** tab.

Adjusting Touch Screen Audio Feedback

You can set the system to provide audio feedback each time you touch a control or use the keyboard on the touch screen. You can turn the audio feedback on or off and adjust the volume of the audio feedback to compensate for background noise in your work area. The audio feedback is off by default.

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
3. Click **System Settings**, and then click the **Display** tab.
4. Select a setting for **Touch Screen Audio Feedback Setting**.
5. Select a setting for **Touch Screen Keyboard Audio Feedback Setting**.
6. Click **Close**.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Utilities Touch Screen

The **Utilities** touch screen displays these sub-tabs:

- **Physio**: contains the controls for the physio features. For details about physio controls, see the *Help*.
- **DVR**: contains the controls to operate the DVD recorder. For details about the DVD recorder controls, see the *Help*.
- **System**: contains controls that allow you to temporarily adjust system configurations for an exam. You can also access **Setups** from this tab to make permanent changes to the system. For details about the system controls, see the *Help*.

System Tab Touch Screen Controls

This topic describes the touch screen controls for the **System** tab on the **Utilities** touch screen. Some of the controls are visible immediately, and others may be visible only when particular transducers or presets are active.

To use a touch screen control or change its setting, touch it. If it is in the bottom row, you can also turn or press the knob directly below it.

System Tab Touch Screen Controls

Name	Description
Accept Prior to Store	A control used to display image loops for approval before they are stored.
Capture Type	A control used to select the capture type: **Prospective** captures a specified acquired loop length (for a number of beats or seconds after the **Acquire** control is pressed). **Retrospective** captures a specified loop length from the imaging buffer after the **Acquire** control is pressed.
CP Brightness	A control used to adjust the brightness of the control panel and the touch screen display.
Delete User Presets	A control used to delete all custom (user-defined) presets.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Name	Description
Erase Text Annotations on Unfreeze	A control used to erase all text annotations on a frozen image when the system returns to live imaging.
Export IQ Optimization	A control used to start the **Export IQ Wizard**.
EV Brightness	A control used to adjust the brightness of an image displayed on an external monitor.
EV Contrast	A control used to adjust the contrast of an image displayed on an external monitor.
External Video Brightness/ Contrast	A control used to show and hide the **EV Brightness** and **EV Contrast** controls.
Help	A control used to display the system *Help*.
Hide Image Info	A control used to show and hide image information in the imaging display.
Hide Patient Info	A control used to show and hide the patient information in the patient bar. See "Hiding Patient Name and ID on Images" on page 255.
Hide Thumbnails	A control used to show and hide the image thumbnail pane in the imaging display.
Loop Length	A control used to set the duration of the **Loop Type** in either heartbeats or time.
Loop Type	A control used to set the loop type to either time (in seconds) or beats (heartbeats). The loop type selected depends on whether or not ECG is active and if the R-wave is detected.
Monitor Black Level	A control used to set the level of darkness of the monitor background.
Monitor Brightness	A control used to adjust monitor brightness to compensate for changes in ambient light. Use this control to quickly make temporary adjustments to the monitor brightness setting in the setups. Turn **Monitor Brightness** to select a setting from **1** (darkest) to **7** (lightest).
Monitor Tint	A control used to adjust the tint of the system display. This control affects only the appearance of images on the monitor; it does not affect saved or exported images.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Name	Description
Print Screen	A control used to save an image of the full screen to the system hard drive and a copy of an image to the same destination devices as the **Print** control. **Print Screen** is available in live imaging, in Review mode, and when the image is frozen.
Setups	A control used to access the system parameters that you can change.

Trackball

The trackball is located in the center of the control panel. Moving the trackball moves the active object on the display, such as the pointer or the measurement caliper.

The tools and icons area of the imaging display includes a trackball icon that identifies the function assigned to each trackball button. The functions of the buttons change to match your current task. There are trackball assignments for each major system mode, protocols, labels, body markers, calculations, and measurements.

Trackball Arbitration Icon

For example, the functions of the left and right trackball buttons can allow you to:

- Cycle through cineloop sequences when the image is frozen or in **Review**.
- Erase traces.
- Select measurements within a group.

The functions of the middle trackball button allow you to:

- Activate the spectral trace in M-mode and Doppler imaging.
- Complete measurements and calculations.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

The labels under the trackball image indicate the functions that are available for the entire trackball.

NOTE

For some measurements, the trackball functions become available only after you press **Measure**.

You can also configure the trackball buttons. For more information, see “Configuring the Trackball Buttons” on page 198.

Configuring the Trackball Buttons

You can configure the left and right trackball buttons for the measurements that you perform.

For instructions, see the system *Help*.

Soft Key Controls

Soft key controls (knobs that can be pressed and turned) are along the top of the control panel. Depending on your system configuration, one or two rows of labels for soft key functions and settings appear along the bottom of the touch screen. Each column of labels corresponds to the soft key below it on the control panel. The soft keys select imaging features and settings. The functions of the soft keys change depending on the mode, the application, the preset, and the transducer.

If a function is assigned to a soft key, the ring around the knob is amber. If no function is assigned to a soft key, the ring is unlit.

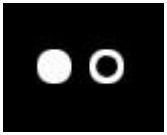
Sometimes, two functions are available for a soft key. Only one of the functions can be active at a time. By default, pressing the corresponding knob on the control panel or touching the label selects the active function. You can disable press behavior for soft key controls (see “Disabling Press Behavior for Soft Key Controls” on page 199). The label for active functions is amber. The label for inactive functions is white.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Many modes offer two or more pages of soft keys. To display the second page, place your finger on the touch screen and swipe to the left. To return to the first page, place your finger on the touch screen and swipe to the right.

You can also touch the page indicator, located above the soft keys, to display the next available page of soft keys. The page indicator shows how many pages of soft keys are available and which one is displayed. For example, this page indicator shows that the first of two available soft key pages is selected:



Soft Key Page Indicator

Depending on your system configuration, you can also touch the arrows, or touch between the page indicator and the arrows, to display the next page of soft keys.

Disabling Press Behavior for Soft Key Controls

Soft key controls (knobs that can be pressed and turned) are located along the top of the control panel. Sometimes, two functions are available for a soft key. Only one of the functions can be active at a time. Pressing the corresponding knob on the control panel or touching the label selects the active function.

For nonimaging functions, you can disable the press behavior for selecting the active function for soft key controls. Disabling press behavior prevents unintentional presses when you turn a soft key control.

You cannot disable press behavior when using PercuNav Image Fusion and Interventional Navigation.

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
3. Click **System Settings**.
4. Click the **Mode** tab.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

5. In **Unlabeled Knobs Below Touch Screen**, select **Pressing Knob Will Not Change Assignment**. To re-enable press behavior, select **Pressing Knob Changes Assignment**.
6. Click **Close**.

To change the function of a soft key control after you have disabled press behavior, touch the soft key's corresponding touch screen label.

Using the Keyboard

The system has a touch-screen keyboard, which you can use to enter patient data, exam comments, image annotation, setup information, and your logon password.

The touch-screen keyboard may appear automatically during certain activities.

1. If necessary, touch  (Keyboard) to display the keyboard.
2. When you are done typing, touch another tab on the touch screen to close the keyboard.

Setting the Default Caps Lock Status

You can set the **Caps Lock** key to be on or off by default when the system is turned on.

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
3. Click **System Settings**, and then click **Display**.
4. Under **Default Caps Lock Setting**, click **Locked at Power Up** or **Unlocked at Power Up**.

Status Icons

Status icons on the display let you control certain features and check the status of tasks. Status can be indicated by colors or symbols within an icon, and by the absence of an icon.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Icon	Description
	Indicates the patient data security status.
	Displayed when the iSCAN Intelligent Optimization or AutoSCAN feature is on.
	Displayed when a physio trace is active.
	Displayed when Send on Demand is available.
	Displayed when Remote Access is enabled, but there is no active Remote Access session.
	Displayed when a Remote Access session is active.
	Displayed when the system is acquiring an image or an image is opening in the **Review** pane.
	Indicates the status of a Remote Access session: • No dot: Enabled but not active • Green dot: Enabled and active • Red X: Disabled
	Indicates the status of a Network Packet Capture: • Green dot: Enabled and running • Red X: Enabled but not running

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Icon	Description
	Displayed when the microphone is on.
	Indicates the status of the network and exports: • Green dot: Connected • Red X: Disconnected or error Click the icon to view details of network status or export queue.
	Indicates the status of the wireless network: • Green dot: Connected • Red X: Disconnected or error • Yellow exclamation point (!) warning: IP address is invalid or has not been validated. • Blue vertical bands: Strength of wireless signal Click the icon to open the **DICOM Setup** dialog box. This icon appears only if the DICOM licensed options are installed.
	Indicates the status of the media drives: • No dot: Available • Green dot: Writing data • Yellow dot: Drive is empty (or malfunctioning) • Red X: Failed Click the icon to open the **Media Status** dialog box. You can cancel, pause, or resume any data transfer job listed.
	Indicates the status of the DVD recorder (if installed): • Green dot: DVD recorder is recording. • Pause symbol: DVD recording is paused. • Icon is hidden: DVD recorder is not recording.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Icon	Description
	Indicates the status of the current print job: • Icon is displayed: a printer is available. • Green dot: a print job is being printed. • Red X: a print job has failed; an error occurred.
	Indicates the status of Collaboration Live: • No dot: Connected. • Green dot: New message. •  : Not connected.

Enabling or Disabling Tooltips

Tooltips are available for the imaging settings that appear on the imaging display.

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
3. Click **System Settings**, and then click the **Display** tab.
4. Under **Tool Tips**, select **Show** or **Hide**.
5. Click **Close**.

Power Management

The system includes a power management feature that monitors the power level of the battery and notifies you when the battery charge is low. Additionally, the power management feature can safely shut down the system before the battery loses power.

The battery charges whenever the system is connected to AC power.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

CAUTION

The battery is used to ensure quick system startup and easy movement of the system only. You cannot perform scans while in battery mode.

CAUTION

When shipping the system, make sure the battery is removed or inserted upside down to prevent electrical discharge.

NOTE

The battery is standard on Affiniti CVx and Affiniti 70 systems and is a purchasable option for Affiniti 50 systems. If an Affiniti 50 system does not have the battery option, the  (No Battery Power) icon is displayed. On Affiniti 30 systems, the  (AC-only) icon is displayed.

NOTE

When the battery-charge level reaches  (critically low state), the system shuts down automatically.

NOTE

When the system is turned on and in Sleep Mode, batteries power the system.

NOTE

The system must be connected to a wall outlet to be used for imaging.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

If a battery needs to be replaced, contact your Philips service representative.

Sleep Mode

Sleep Mode uses battery power and allows quick startup of the system. It does not eliminate power consumption and should be used only for short periods of time, such as when you transport the system between exam locations. The Sleep Mode control ( ) is in the upper left corner of the control panel, next to the (On/Off) control. When the system is in Sleep Mode, it freezes live imaging, pauses any open study, exits any QLAB study, and terminates any remote connection. Awaken the system to resume normal system operation.

When the system is on battery power, the Sleep Mode time-out is approximately 40 minutes. The system remains in Sleep Mode until it is awakened or powered off, or until the batteries discharge to a critically low state. If the system batteries discharge to a critically low state, the system safely shuts down from Sleep Mode.

To put the system in Sleep Mode, press or disconnect the power cord.

To awaken the system, connect the power cord to restore AC power, and press .

For information on the Sleep Mode status indicators, see “Turning the System On and Off” on page 173.

NOTE

When the system is in Sleep Mode and is connected to AC power, the system remains in Sleep Mode until it is awakened.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Battery Indicators

Battery status indicators on the system display show the battery charge level. Status changes may take several seconds to appear on the display.

CAUTION

The battery is used to ensure quick system startup and easy movement of the system only. You cannot perform scans while in battery mode.

NOTE

The battery is standard on Affiniti CVx and Affiniti 70 systems and is a purchasable option for Affiniti 50 systems. If an Affiniti 50 system does not have the battery option, the  (No Battery Power) icon is displayed. On Affiniti 30 systems, the  (AC-only) icon is displayed.

Battery Status Indicators

Indicator	Description
	The system is running on AC power and the battery charge is 80% to 100%.
	The system is running on AC power and the battery charge is 60% to 80%.
	The system is running on AC power and the battery charge is 40% to 60%.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Indicator	Description
	The system is running on AC power and the battery charge is 20% to 40%.
	The system is running on AC power and the battery charge is 0% to 20%.
	The system is running on AC power and the battery or batteries are not charged or are disconnected.
	AC only (Affiniti 30 systems only).

System Security

The data security feature, if enabled on your system, limits access to previously stored patient data and images. To gain access to such data, you must first log on to the system using an ID and a password. When you are finished using the system, you can log off manually or simply shut down the system, which logs you off automatically. If necessary, you or your site administrator can change your password. See “Changing Your Password” on page 208.

Guest access allows you to perform an exam, but you cannot access patient data nor can you enter Review after you end the exam.

The data security feature is set up by your site administrator. For more information, see the *Help*.

Logging On to the System

When data security is enabled, you must log on to the system before you are able to view or load patient files.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

1. Click  (**Data Security Locked: Login**) at the bottom of the imaging display.
2. If prompted, review the logon message and click **OK**.
3. In the **Data Security Logon** dialog box, type your user name.
4. Press the **Tab** key and type your password. (If you forget your system password, contact your site administrator.)
5. Click **Login** to log on to the system and start the valid access period.

Logging Off of the System

If you do not log off, the system automatically logs you off when you shut down the system or after the system has been inactive for the length of time shown in **Auto Log Off** on the **User Settings** tab of the **Data Security** setups.

1. Click  (**Log Off**) at the bottom of the imaging display.
2. In the **LogOff** dialog box, click **Yes**.

NOTE

Logging off of the system does not change the current patient, but it does deny further access to protected patient data.

Changing Your Password

If the data security feature is enabled on your system, you must log on to the system to gain access to patient data and images.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

After the site administrator has given you a password for the system, you can change it as needed, unless your site administrator has enabled remote user management. If remote user management is enabled, you cannot change your password on the system. For instructions, see your site administrator. Passwords must conform to the password policy, if the site administrator has set one.

NOTE

The **Auto Log Off** time shown on the **User Settings** display indicates how long the system can be inactive before you are logged off automatically. Only the site administrator can change this setting.

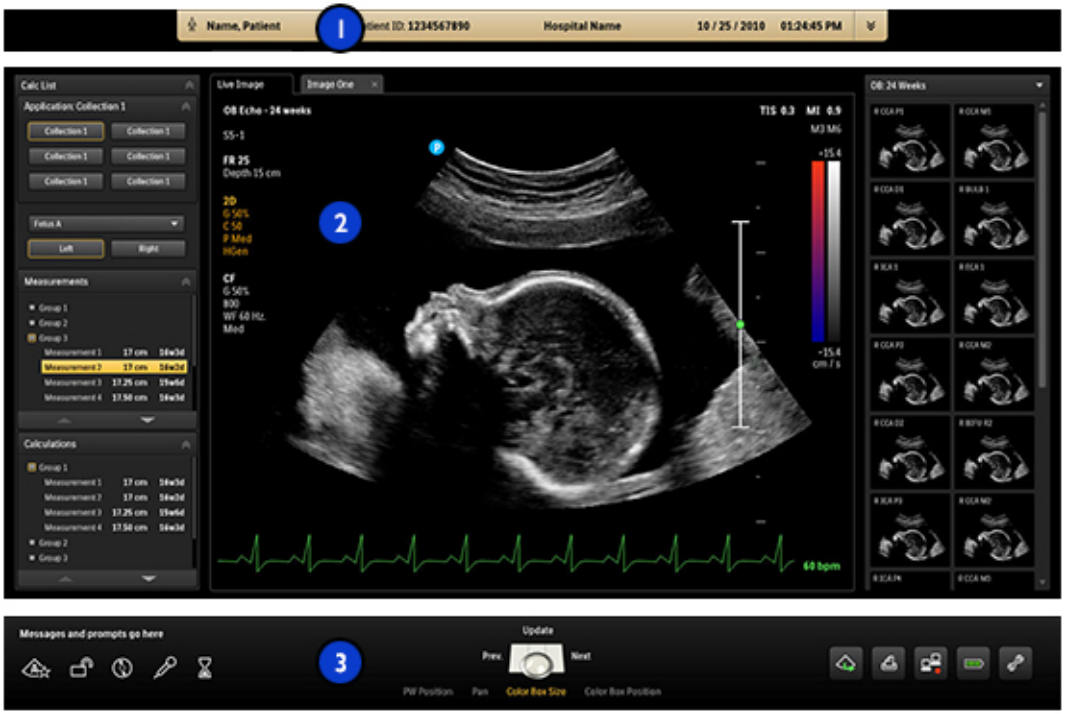
1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
3. Click **Data Security**.
4. On the **User Settings** tab, click **Change Password**.
5. For **Old Password**, type your current password, and then press the **Tab** key.
6. For **New Password**, type the new password you want to use, and then press the **Tab** key.
7. For **Confirm Password**, type your new password again.
8. Click **OK**.
9. To exit the setups, click **Close**.

Imaging Display

The imaging display contains three, distinct regions:

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips



Imaging Display

1	Patient bar
2	Image area
3	Tools, trackball status, and icons

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Patient Bar

After you start an exam, patient and exam data appear in the patient bar, which is directly above the ultrasound image. With the **Optional Header Info (pick 3 of 5)** setting on the **Header** tab in the **System Settings** setups, you can select three of the five additional information options to display on the patient bar: **Patient Birth Date**, **Patient Gender**, **Institution Name**, **System Model**, and **Performed By**.

Patient Bar

1	Patient name
2	Patient ID
3	Date and time
4	Expand patient bar icon: Click to view all of the available patient data during an exam.

Image Area

The image area is approximately in the center of the display and includes the following:

- *Status bar*: Indicates the current status of the image (live or frozen).
- *Left pane*: Lists available calculations and protocols, and the calculations and measurements being performed; displays calculation results; and provides other tools as necessary. Tabs at the top of the left pane enable you to switch among those lists. To hide the left pane, select  , in the top right corner of the pane.
- *Imaging area*: Displays the live image (or other applications, such as Q-Apps), a depth scale that includes the focus setting (to the right of the image), a TGC curve, a grayscale bar, and a color bar (to the right of the depth scale). In M-mode and Doppler, the sweeping display appears either below the 2D image or to the right of it, depending on the format you select.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- *Thumbnail pane*: Displays thumbnail images from the current exam.

For general imaging, a scan plane orientation marker appears at the top left of the image. For cardiac exams, the orientation marker appears at the top right of the image. The marker corresponds to the orientation marker on the transducer. The marker always follows the orientation of the image. When you invert the image by using **Left/Right** or **Top/Bottom**, the marker position changes accordingly.

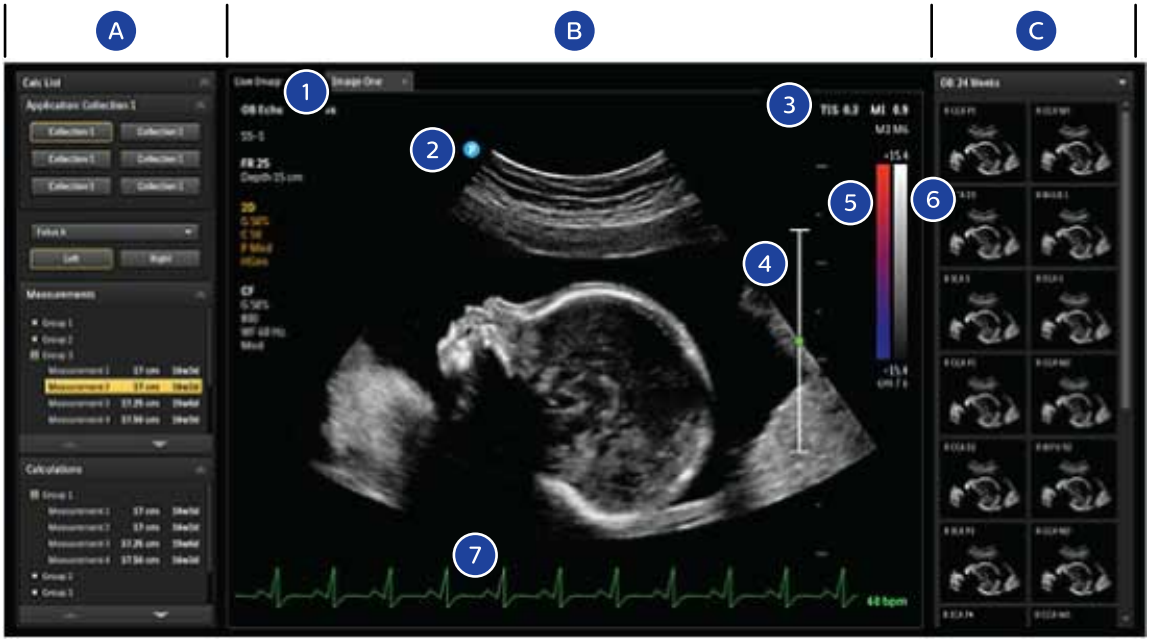


Image Area

A	Left pane
B	Imaging area
1	Status bar
2	Scan plane orientation marker
3	MI and TI values

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4	Focal indicator
5	Color bar
6	Grayscale bar
7	ECG display
C	Thumbnail images

Tools and Icons Area

The tools and icons area displays the following:

- *Status icons*: Provide status of system features and cannot be selected.
- *Trackball arbitration icon*: Displays the current function of trackball and the trackball buttons. The labels above and to the left and right of the trackball icon indicate the function assigned to the middle trackball button and the left and right trackball buttons, respectively. The labels under the trackball icon indicate the functions that are available for the entire trackball. For details, see “Trackball” on page 197.
- *System management icons*: Provide status and can be selected. When you click a system management icon, a dialog box displays additional information or available actions.

For definitions of status and system management icons, see “Status Icons” on page 200.

Tools and Icons Area

1	Status icons
2	Trackball arbitration icon
3	System management icons (interactive)

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Displaying the Image Area on the Touch Screen

You can display live images, except 3D and 4D images, on the **2D** touch screen. Use this feature if, for example, you want to view the live image when the ultrasound system monitor is turned away from you.

You can control the TGC and LGC on the live imaging touch screen.

1. Press or touch **2D**.
2. Swipe until you see the live image on the touch screen.

Resizing the Image Area

You can set the image area to occupy the entire display with the MaxVue display. The MaxVue display hides the left and right panes and minimizes the trackball arbitration icon and icons pane. You can show the panes as needed. In the setups, you can also change the appearance of the trackball arbitration icon (see "Changing the MaxVue Trackball Arbitration Icon" on page 215).

NOTE

Calipers, measurements, and arrows disappear when changing from the standard display to the MaxVue display.

1. To enable the MaxVue display, touch **MaxVue**. To disable the MaxVue display, touch **MaxVue** again.
2. To display the left or right pane, do one of the following:
   - Hover the cursor over the left side or right side of the display and double-click. The pane remains displayed as long as the cursor is over it.
   - Click  (Pin) for the pane that you want to display. The  becomes an amber color. To unpin the pane, click  again. If you restart the system, the pane will be unpinned.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Changing the MaxVue Trackball Arbitration Icon

For the MaxVue display, you can select from two appearances for the trackball arbitration icon area (trackball legend):

- The text-only ("thin") display hides the trackball icon but shows the trackball arbitration text. To see the trackball icon, move the pointer to the bottom of the display.
- The watermark display shows a transparent trackball icon and transparent trackball arbitration text, which you can reposition.

1. To set the appearance of the trackball arbitration icon, do the following:
   a. Touch **Utilities**.
   b. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
   c. Click **System Settings** and then click **Display**.
   d. Under **Trackball Legend Style for MaxVue**, select either **Watermark Trackball Legend** or **Thin Toolbar Trackball Legend**.
2. To reposition the watermark trackball arbitration icon, press **Pointer** to display the cursor, and then click the trackball icon and drag it to the location you want.

Emergency Studies

If the site administrator has enabled the data security feature on your system, it is important to understand how to start a study in an emergency situation.

In an emergency, you can start a study without entering patient data. During an emergency study, the system provides a temporary ID for image acquisition and report editing. You should change the temporary ID to correct the patient data before you end the study. Otherwise, the temporary ID is the only identifier for that study.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Temporary ID

Use the temporary ID feature to start an exam quickly. This feature allows you to perform an exam without first entering patient data. When you select this feature, the system enters unique, temporary placeholders for the patient's last name and ID. Using the temporary ID feature allows you to perform an exam as you would normally.

When you use the temporary ID workflow, images can be sent to a PACS or to a DICOM printer before entering actual patient data, if the system is configured to send or print images as you scan.

For an exam started with a temporary ID, edit patient data before ending the exam. For information on editing patient data, see the *Help*. After the exam is ended, you cannot change patient data. When the patient data is changed, all images are automatically resent to any local printers that they were previously sent to.

If your system is connected to a DICOM Worklist Server, you can load patient data to replace the temporary ID data. For information on replacing a patient with a modality worklist patient, see the *Help*.

NOTE

If you have configured a DICOM Performed Procedure Step server, PPS messages are sent for the temporary ID. If you edit patient data before you end the exam, PPS "discontinue" messages are sent for the temporary ID.

You can print images before you enter patient data (if the system is configured to print images as you scan), but those images are labeled only with the temporary ID.

Starting Emergency Studies

In an emergency, you can use the temporary ID feature to start an exam without first having to enter patient data. Just click **Use Temporary ID** after you acquire an image.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

You can create a temporary ID when starting a protocol, printing, acquiring an image, or saving a volume.

1. Touch **Patient** and then do one of the following:
   - Click **Use Temporary ID** on the **Patient Data** display.
   - Touch **Temporary ID** on the touch screen keyboard.
2. When the exam is finished, do the following:
   a. Touch **End Exam**.
   b. In the **Temporary Patient Study** dialog box, click **End Exam**.

Setting the Auto Freeze Function

The Auto Freeze function stops imaging and freezes the image, if a control is not manipulated within the **Wait** time that you specify. The default time is 5 minutes. After Auto Freeze has been invoked, press **Freeze** to restart imaging.

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
3. Click **System Settings** and then click the **Display** tab.
4. Under **Auto Freeze**, select **On**, and then select the **Wait** time.
5. Click **Close**.

Transducer Receptacles and Cable Management

The system includes four receptacles for imaging transducers, one receptacle for a pulsed- or continuous-wave Doppler probe (optional), and one receptacle for physio (ECG), if physio is included in your system's configuration. All receptacles can be occupied simultaneously, but only one transducer at a time can be active.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Transducer and Physio (ECG) Receptacles

1	Physio (ECG) receptacle
2	Doppler probe receptacle
3	Imaging transducer receptacle

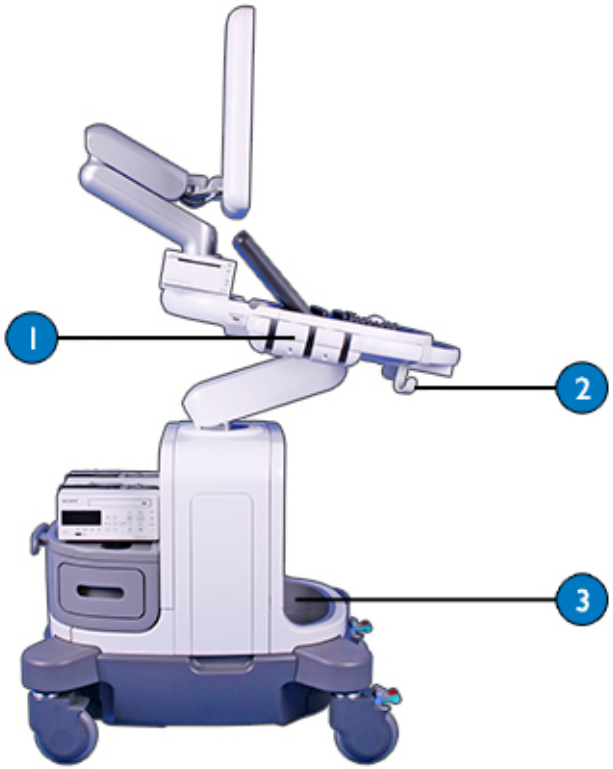
When a transducer is not in use, store it in one of the transducer holders on the system cart. To prevent cables from being stepped on or run over by the cart, do any or all of the following:

- Loop transducer cables over the cable hangers.
- Use the easy-clip transducer cable managers to keep the transducer cables off the floor.
- Place the cables in the cable-management tray at the bottom of the cart.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

For more information about the easy-clip transducer cable managers, see “Using the Easy-Clip Transducer Cable Managers” on page 220.



Transducer Holders and Cable Hangers

1	Transducer holder
2	Cable hanger
3	Cable management tray

For endocavity transducers, you can insert a holder into the existing transducer holders.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Endocavity Transducer Holder

Using the Easy-Clip Transducer Cable Managers

Easy-clip transducer cable managers keep transducer cables off the floor, while taking the weight of the cable when you are using the transducer. Cable managers can be disassembled for cleaning, if necessary (see “Cleaning and Maintaining the System” on page 400). Cable managers may need to be replaced approximately every six months.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

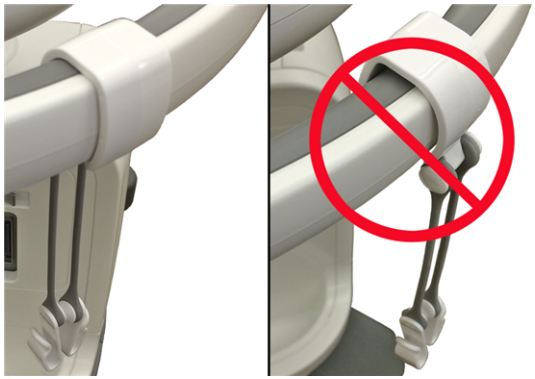
Philips

Cable Manager with Cable

1. Place the transducer in a holder.
2. Attach the handle hook of the easy-clip cable manager to the system handle. Make sure the handle hook is oriented correctly, with the cable clips suspended from the inside of the system handle:

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips



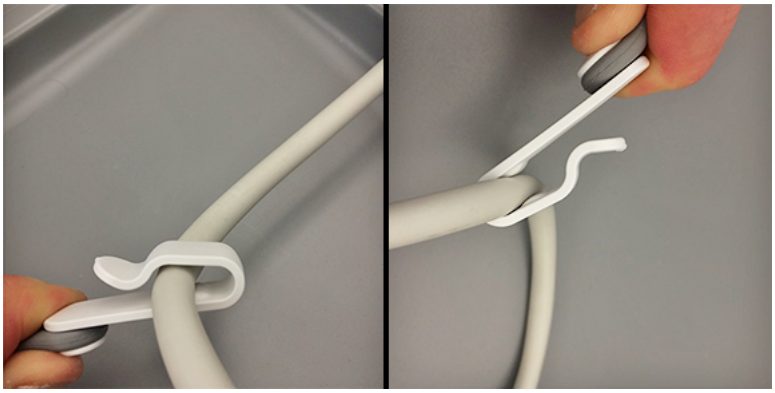
Correct (left) and Incorrect (right) Orientation of the Handle Hook

CAUTION

To avoid damage to the transducer cable and the easy-clip cable manager, do not force a large transducer cable into the smaller end of the clip.

3. With the transducer cable hanging free (not from a cable hanger), find the middle of the transducer cable, and then press it into the clip. (Insert only one cable into each clip.) The clip can accommodate transducer cables with large and small diameters:

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021



Positions for Large (left) and Small (right) Cables

4. Lower the transducer cable, and allow it to hang from the cable manager. Reposition the clip until the entire transducer cable is off the floor and away from the wheels.

Connecting Transducers

The system has four imaging transducer receptacles and one Doppler probe receptacle. All receptacles are located on the front of the system.

- To connect an imaging transducer to a receptacle, insert its connector into the receptacle and move the locking lever to the left.
- To connect a Doppler probe, insert its connector into the receptacle until it latches.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Connecting a Transducer to the System

Selecting a Transducer

When you turn on the system, the system initializes the default transducer and preset. If the default transducer is not connected, or if no transducer is set as the default, the system initializes the transducer that is in the leftmost receptacle. For information on setting a default transducer, see “Setting the Default Transducer and Preset” on page 236.

You can connect or disconnect a transducer during live imaging without damaging the transducer or the system.

1. Touch the transducer name to select it.
2. Touch the preset that you want to use.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

After you select the preset, the system calibrates the transducer, enables the transducer for operation, and updates system status to reflect the transducer type and the preset you selected.

Selecting a Preset

When the system is turned on, the system selects the same preset that was in use when the system shut down (unless it is incompatible with the initially selected transducer). For more information, see “Setting the Default Transducer and Preset” on page 236.

During system operation, you can select a different preset for the selected transducer.

1. Touch the transducer name to select it.
2. Touch the preset that you want to use.

ECG Feature

The system can display three physio traces, each representing a physiological input. These inputs can include low-level ECG, high-level ECG, respiratory, pulse, phono, and auxiliary signals. (Low-level ECG comes from leads connected to the patient; high-level ECG comes from a patient monitor or other similar equipment.) Heart rate, derived from the ECG signal, is displayed on the screen whenever ECG is connected and displayed.

WARNING

The Physio feature is intended to provide the R-wave trigger for ultrasound image capture. The Physio trace is used to provide a qualitative assessment of lead connections. The Physio feature is not intended to be used as a monitoring device or to make a diagnostic determination.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

DVD, CD, and USB Devices

The system supports a variety of removable media including DVD, CD, and USB storage devices.

For additional information on specific applications of the DVD drive or DVD recorder, see the *Help*.

For details about DVD and CD devices, see “DVD Drive” on page 227.

For details about USB storage devices, see “USB Storage Devices” on page 228.

Media Compatibility

CD media capacity is approximately 700 MB; single-layer DVD media capacity is approximately 4.7 GB. Rewritable media types (indicated by the RW suffix) can be erased and used again, but you cannot erase media that has the R suffix. Dual-layer DVD media is unsupported.

For information on USB media, see “USB Storage Devices” on page 228.

DVD performance and compatibility depend on many factors. Those factors include drive model, media type, media format, media speed, media vendor, and supporting software.

Some Windows PCs do not recognize some types of DVDs. Therefore, a system may successfully write studies to a DVD, but a Windows PC may be unable to read the DVD or the files on it. If you encounter this issue, consider changing to a different media type or upgrading the DVD drive on your Windows PC.

Multiple studies can be written to a disc, during one upload, up to the limit of its capacity. After the studies are written to the disc, the disc is finalized and cannot be written to again. To reuse a finalized RW disc, you must first reformat it. To record multiple studies to a disc, you must end the exam you just recorded before removing the disc.

NOTE

A single disc can be used between systems of the same model number, but only for copying logs and setup data.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

DVD Drive

The system offers a purchasable DVD drive. You can use a DVD drive to store and transfer patient files, including full exams, 3D data sets, and reports. In addition, you can save, restore, and distribute configuration data.

You do not need to format a disc before storing data on it.

Compatible Disc Media

The following disc types have been qualified for use in the system DVD drive:

- CD-R
- CD-RW
- DVD-R
- DVD+R
- DVD+RW
- DVD-RW

NOTE

DVD-RW media has a slow write speed, making it less suitable than DVD+RW for use with the system.

Loading and Ejecting a Disc

Do one of the following:

- To load a disc, insert the disc and gently push in the disc tray to close it.
- To eject a disc, press the Eject button on the drive.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Erasing a DVD or CD

Erasing a rewritable disc (DVD+RW, DVD-RW, or CD-RW) erases all of the data on it and prepares it for reuse. After a disc is erased, the entire capacity of the disc is once again available. You can also erase a write-once disc (DVD+R, DVD-R, or CD-R), but you will not be able to write files to the erased portion of the disc.

NOTE

If the system cannot erase the disc, use a computer to erase it. If the computer cannot erase the disc, it may be damaged.

1. Touch **Review**.
2. Load a disc into the drive and wait for it to become available.
3. In the **Review Exam** display, click **Erase**.

NOTE

If the **Erase** control is unavailable, you cannot erase the disc.

4. In the **Erase Disc** dialog box, click **OK** to erase the disc.
5. When the dialog box indicates that erasing is complete, click **OK**.
6. Click **Close**.

USB Storage Devices

The capacity of the USB storage device is usually indicated on the device. You can use USB storage devices for tasks for which you would use a CD or DVD.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

The system has four USB ports to which you can connect USB storage devices. Such devices include USB storage devices and USB hard disk drives. One USB port is on either side of the control panel, and two are in the left-side panel. When multiple USB devices are connected to the system, you can select the device used for import or export in the Patient Directory. Read the following information before using USB storage devices.

Some older, portable hard drives do not work when connected to a single USB port on the system. Connect a dual-port USB cable between the drive and the two USB ports in the left-side panel.

The system assigns a drive letter to each connected USB device. The assigned letter varies from system to system.

When you use a USB cable to connect a USB device to system, use a short cable, or follow the cable recommendations of the drive manufacturer.

Before using USB storage devices, see “Selecting Compatible USB Media” on page 230.

WARNING

Connecting externally powered USB hard disk drives to the system involves electrical safety risks. If you connect such drives to the system, you must observe the electrical safety warnings in the “Safety” section. Philips recommends that you use only USB hard disk drives powered from the USB connector, or use USB storage devices.

CAUTION

When transferring data to or from a USB device, be sure the transfer is complete before removing the USB device. For USB devices that have an indicator, be sure the indicator is no longer flashing before removing the device.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

CAUTION

Ultrasound systems may become vulnerable to security breaches when they accept removable media. Removable USB storage devices may contain viruses. Philips recommends that you use a virus-free system to scan and format USB storage devices before connecting them to the ultrasound system.

CAUTION

Philips does not recommend that you use USB storage devices for long-term storage. Follow your IT department's recommended practices for intended use of USB storage devices. For more information about security on the ultrasound system, see *Shared Roles for System and Data Security*, included on your *User Information* USB media.

Dirty or corroded connections can cause malfunctions. To ensure proper operation, confirm that the USB connections are clean.

Do not use any hard drive that does not comply with the USB Power Delivery specification, because it may cause temporary loss of USB port functionality. Do not use a USB hard drive that requires an external AC power source, because it may compromise the system’s electrical safety.

Selecting Compatible USB Media

You can use USB storage devices and USB hard drives for import and export operations. For best results, use USB 2.0 compatible media with a write speed of at least 35 MB/s. (Those devices are usually also compatible with USB 3.0.)

System USB ports meet the USB Power Delivery specification, and you can use them to power USB hard drives that conform to that specification.

The system supports the following USB devices:

- Single-partition USB storage devices

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- USB storage devices that do not use or contain any antivirus or other executable software
- USB hard disk devices that conform to the USB Power Delivery specification
- USB 2.0 compatible devices

NOTE

The system supports devices that are both USB 2.0 and USB 3.0 compliant. But devices labeled as only USB 3.0 compliant may not work on the system.

Barcode Scanner

Your ultrasound system supports an optional barcode scanner for the following uses:

- Enter patient data
- Select and review an exam
- Select a patient from a worklist

The system supports only barcodes that contain one type of information (for example, patient ID, patient name, or medical record number). If you want to scan more than one type of patient data, each type of data must be in its own barcode.

Supported Symbologies

The barcode scanner supports the following symbologies:

- Aztec
- Code 39
- Code 128
- DataMatrix
- EAN/UPC (EAN8, EAN13, UPCa, UPCe)
- Interleaved 2 of 5

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- MaxiCode
- PDF417
- QR code
- UCC/EAN-128

NOTE

Only barcode scanners that conform to Philips standards and that have been configured to read your site's barcode symbology can be used with the system.

Configuring the Barcode Scanner

Before you use your barcode scanner, you must configure it.

1. Connect a Philips-approved barcode scanner to a USB port on your ultrasound system.
2. Scan the following barcode and verify that you hear a two-tone beep:

Configuration Barcode

Customizing the System for the Barcode Scanner

You can customize your system to populate specific fields, or search with specific filters, automatically when a barcode is scanned.

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
3. Click **System Settings**, and then click the **Patient Data** tab.
4. Under **Barcode Settings**, do any of the following:

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- To identify the field that is selected by default when you touch **Patient**, select the field name from the **Scanned Field** menu.
- To identify an additional field to be selected automatically after the **Scanned Field** is populated, select the field name from the **Second Field** menu.
- To identify the filter that is displayed by default in the **Worklist** tab of the **Patient Data** form, select the filter name from the **Find** menu.
- To identify the filter that is displayed by default in **Review Exam**, select the filter name from the **Find** menu.

5. Click **Close**.

NOTE

Before you can use the Modality Worklist feature, you must specify the DICOM Modality Worklist server. For details, see "System Administration" in the *Help*.

Entering Patient Data from a Barcode

CAUTION

This system cannot interpret the type of data in your barcode. It is your responsibility to ensure that the correct information is scanned into the appropriate field.

1. Connect a Philips-approved barcode scanner to a USB port on your ultrasound system.
2. Touch **Patient**. The field set up to be populated first with barcode data is selected automatically.
3. Scan the barcode.
4. Confirm that the correct fields are populated with the scanned information.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

5. If you have set up a second field to receive barcode data, that field is selected automatically. Scan the second barcode to input data into that field.
6. If you want to input scanned barcode data in other fields, select the field manually, and then repeat steps 3 and 4.
7. When you are finished, click **Done**.

Selecting and Opening an Exam from a Barcode

1. Connect a Philips-approved barcode scanner to a USB port on your ultrasound system.
2. Touch **Review**. The filter option that you selected in the setups is displayed automatically.
3. Scan the barcode.
4. If the search yields only one exam, the system opens that exam automatically. If the search yields multiple exams, click the exam you want, and then click **Open**.

Selecting Worklist Patients from a Barcode

1. Connect a Philips-approved barcode scanner to a USB port on your ultrasound system.
2. Touch **Patient**, and then click **Worklist**. The filter option that you selected in the setups is displayed automatically.
3. Scan the barcode.
4. If the search yields only one patient file, the system opens that patient file automatically. If the search yields multiple patient files, click the file you want, and then click **Open**.

NOTE

Before you can use the Modality Worklist feature, you must specify the DICOM Modality Worklist server. For details, see "System Administration" in the *Help*.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

6 Customizing the System

You can customize your system to increase efficiency and streamline your workflow. You can do the following:

- Create presets designed specifically for the exams you perform.
- Change system settings to reflect your needs.
- Add options to enhance your imaging abilities.
- Create custom procedures for specific patients, transducers, and presets.

Presets

A preset is a group of settings that optimizes the system for a specific type of exam. Presets establish many initial settings, such as gain value, color map, filter, and items on the touch screen.

When you turn on your system, the default preset is active. Before you begin an exam, be sure that the appropriate preset is active.

Each transducer has one default preset and may also have several additional factory presets that you can select. You cannot delete the factory presets. However, they provide a starting point from which you can create your own presets. You can create and store up to 53 presets per transducer/application combination, depending on the space available on the touch screen. If you need to create more than 53 presets per transducer, you can save presets to a DVD or a USB storage device and restore them when you need to use them.

The available presets are determined by the selected transducer.

NOTE

Presets are available only if you purchased the corresponding application-package option.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Setting the Default Transducer and Preset

You can set a default transducer and preset so that each time the system is turned on, that transducer and preset are initiated automatically. The system selects the default transducer regardless of which receptacle it is connected to. If the default transducer is not connected when the system is turned on, the system initiates the transducer connected to the leftmost connector and the first available preset for that transducer.

1. Touch the name of the transducer you want to use.
2. Touch the preset you want.
3. Touch the transducer name a second time.
4. Touch **Set Default**.

Applications and Presets

Applications are broad areas of medical study. Within each application, there are Philips presets for specific areas of study. For example, within the **Small Parts** application, the presets are **Thyroid**, **Testicular**, and **Prostate**. The transducer touch screen lists the available preset combinations for the selected transducer.

You specify how the system will be set up for operation by selecting a preset.

Hiding Factory Presets

You can select which factory presets are hidden or shown. By default, all presets are shown. You can hide all factory presets, all the factory presets for a transducer, or individual presets. You cannot choose to hide the current, active preset.

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Hide Factory Presets**.
3. In **Hide Factory Presets**, do any of the following:
   - To hide a preset or a collection of presets, select it.
   - To show a hidden preset or collection of presets, deselect it.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- To clear all the selections, click **Clear All**.

4. Click **OK**.

2D Quick Save Presets

2D Quick Save presets provide a quick way to set imaging parameters to the values you prefer for a specific exam type. When you create a 2D Quick Save preset, you can specify the default calculations package, annotation, body marker, application, preset, and transducer. A 2D Quick Save preset stores the primary imaging mode and settings that are active when you create the preset.

After you create a 2D Quick Save preset, it appears on the transducer touch screen when the associated transducer is selected. When you select a Quick Save preset, the system automatically invokes the settings in the preset. You can copy existing Quick Save presets onto removable media and load them into another ultrasound system of the same model and number. You can also delete existing Quick Save presets.

3D Quick Save Presets

For some transducer-preset combinations, the 3D Quick Save preset feature provides a quick way to set 3D imaging parameters to the values you prefer for a specific 2D preset. A 3D Quick Save preset stores the settings that are active when you create the preset as a subset of the current 2D preset.

NOTE

The 3D Quick Save presets store the **Top/Bottom** and **Left/Right** imaging orientations; however, 2D orientation settings are inherited in 3D when you activate 3D imaging from 2D imaging.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

After you create a 3D Quick Save preset, it appears on one of the **3D Standby** touch-screen pages when the associated transducer and 2D preset are selected. When you select a Quick Save preset, the system automatically invokes the settings in the preset. You can copy existing 3D Quick Save presets onto removable media and load them into another ultrasound system of the same model and number. You can also delete an existing 3D Quick Save preset, but you cannot modify it. A maximum of eight 3D Quick Save presets can be saved.

Creating 2D Quick Save Presets

You can create a new 2D Quick Save preset that is based on an existing preset. You can do this even during an exam, while using the preset.

1. Touch the transducer name.
2. Touch the preset on which you want to base your Quick Save preset.
3. Adjust the system controls to create the settings for your preset. (You can select an imaging mode, an image orientation, the number of focal zones, and so on.)
4. Swipe the touch screen, from right to left, to view the next page.
5. Touch **Save Preset**.
   - For the **Quick Save Label**, type the name of the new preset.
   - For **Calculation Package**, select a calculation package.
   - For **Annotation/Body Marks**, select the annotation and body mark you want as the defaults.
6. Click **OK**.

NOTE

The system does not save all settings correctly when you create a Quick Save preset in Elastography mode. Instead, adjust the image manually.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

When you select a Quick Save preset, the layout always appears as **4-up** in 3D, 4D, or STIC, regardless of the layout format that was active when you created the Quick Save preset. To change the layout format, touch **Layout**.

Creating 3D Quick Save Presets

1. Touch the transducer name.
2. Touch the transducer preset on which you want to base your 3D Quick Save preset.
3. Press **3D** and start 3D imaging.
4. Adjust the system controls to create the settings for your preset.
5. Touch **Save 3D Preset**.
6. For the preset name, type the name of the new preset. Preset names are not case-sensitive.
7. Click **OK**.

Using 3D Quick Save Presets

1. Press **3D** and start 3D imaging.
2. Go to the second or third page of the touch-screen controls.
3. Under **3D Presets**, select the preset to use.

Modifying 2D Quick Save Presets

You can modify a 2D Quick Save preset that you created. You can do this even during an exam, while using the preset.

1. Touch the transducer name.
2. Touch the preset that you want to modify.
3. Adjust the system controls to modify the settings for your preset.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4. Touch **Save Preset**. You may need to swipe the touch screen, from right to left, to view this control.
5. In the **Save Preset** dialog box, complete the following:
   - For the **Quick Save Label**, type the name of the preset that you are modifying.
   - For **Calculation Package**, leave the selection as-is.
   - For **Annotation/Body Marks**, leave the selection as-is.
6. When you are prompted to overwrite the existing setting for the preset, click **OK**.

Deleting Quick Save Presets

You can delete any Quick Save preset on the system except the active 2D preset.

1. If a preset you want to delete is active, deactivate it by touching the associated transducer name and a different preset.
2. Touch **Utilities**.
3. On the **System** tab, touch **Delete User Presets**.
4. In **User Presets Deletion**, select the preset to delete.
5. Click **Delete**.
6. Click **Cancel**.

Copying Quick Save Presets to Removable Media

NOTE

If you receive an error message when exporting data to a DVD or when viewing exam data on a DVD, you may need to eject the DVD from the drive and re-insert it.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

You can copy Quick Save presets to a DVD or a USB storage device. This function is useful for archiving presets and for sharing presets with other ultrasound systems of the same model and number. When you copy Quick Save presets, all available data is copied.

1. Load a DVD into the DVD drive, or connect a USB device to a USB port on the system.
2. On the control panel, press **Support**.
3. Click **System Management**.
4. Click **Backup/Restore**.
5. From the **Select the Media Device** menu, select the removable media that you are using.
6. Click **Backup**. The backup list shows the data that is backed up.
7. If a dialog box indicates that the media is too full to complete the copy process, replace the media and click **Backup** again.
8. After the backup is complete, click **Close**.
9. Click **Done**.

Loading Quick Save Presets from Removable Media

1. Load the DVD containing the data into the DVD drive, or connect the USB device containing the data to a USB port on the system.
2. On the control panel, press **Support**.
3. Click **System Management**.
4. Click **Backup/Restore**.
5. From the **Select the Media Device** menu, select the media type that you are using.
6. Click **Restore**.
7. Deselect the data that you do not want to import.
8. After the import is complete, click **OK**.
9. To exit **Philips SupportConnect**, touch **Close**. A displayed message might prompt you to restart the system.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

System Setups

Setups are system parameters that you can change. By changing setups, you can customize the system to meet your operating preferences.

Setups are organized into six standard categories: **System Settings**, **Analysis**, **Annotations**, **Acquisition/Capture**, **Data Security**, and **Report Templates**. An additional category, **Setups Wizard**, helps you quickly prepare your system for use.

Changes in setups take effect immediately and remain in effect until you change them again or load setups from a DVD or USB device.

NOTE

The institution name exported with DICOM data always reflects the name shown in the setups at the time the exam ended. Philips recommends restarting the system after changing **Institution Name** in the setups.

Procedures for using setup options and descriptions of settings are included throughout the *Help*.

Changing Setups

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
3. Select a setup category on the left side of the setups display.
4. Select a tab or sub-tab at the top of the setups display.
5. Enter text or make selections necessary to set up your system.
6. To exit the setups, touch **Close**.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Hiding the Doppler Velocity Minus Sign

You can choose to include only the numeric value of the Doppler velocity measurements. Doppler velocity is marked as negative (-) when the flow is moving away from the transducer. When reporting on the measurements, you may want only the value, not the direction of flow. When hidden, the negative sign does not appear on the displayed or printed patient reports; however, the sign is still part of the number and is visible when editing a patient report and is included in DICOM structured reports exported from the system.

The option to hide the Doppler velocity minus sign is available in all calculation packages except Adult Echo and Pediatric Echo.

NOTE

When **Hide Doppler Velocity Minus Sign** is enabled, the sign value, whether visible or not, is still considered in calculations performed with the reported value. The system includes the sign value in calculations.

NOTE

If you want to display the selector of the instance with the maximum absolute value, select **(Max(Abs))** for the **Selector** value. For information on setting the measurement selector, see the *Help*.

To specify the display of the Doppler velocity minus sign:

1. In the setups, select **Analysis**.
2. Select the tab of the calculations package that you want to change, and then click **Tools and Results**.
3. Under **Hide Doppler Velocity Minus Sign**, select **On** or **Off**.
4. To exit the setups, touch **Close**.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

System Options

In addition to the standard features available in the system, other features are available as purchasable licensed options.

To add licensed options to your system, you purchase them from your Philips representative. Once purchased, they are installed in your system by a Philips field service engineer.

Installing Temporary Options

You can temporarily install up to five licensed options. You can then evaluate those options for a fixed length of time, which is set by Philips. Before you can install temporary options, you must request and receive an activation key for each option that you want to install. The installation process requires restarting the system, so be sure that the last exam has been closed before installing options.

1. Contact your Philips representative to obtain a key code for each licensed option you want to evaluate.
2. After you receive the key code, touch **End Exam** to ensure that the last exam has been closed.
3. Press **Support**.
4. In **Philips SupportConnect**, select the **Options** tab.
5. Click **Temporary Options**.
6. Click **Enable Temporary Option**, and type the key code.
7. Click **OK**.
8. To enter another key code, click **Enable Temporary Option** again, and type the next key code.
9. Touch **Close**.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Custom Procedures

You can automate a variety of workflows by creating custom procedures for specific patients, transducers, and presets.

Creating a Custom Procedure

When you create a custom clinical procedure, the **Patient Data** tab of the **System Settings** setups lists all transducers and presets available for the system, including transducers and presets unsupported by your system's purchased configuration and imaging options. Select only the transducers and presets supported by your system's configuration and options.

1. Touch **Utilities**.
2. On the **System** tab, touch **Setups**.
3. Click **System Settings** and then click the **Patient Data** tab.
4. Under **Procedure Setup**, do one of the following:
   - To create a new procedure, click **Create New**.
   - To modify an existing procedure or create a new procedure from an existing procedure, select an item from the **Procedure** list, and then click **Modify**.
   - To delete an existing procedure, select an item from the **Procedure** list, and then click **Delete**.
5. For new or modified procedures, complete the following:
   - **Procedure Name**: Enter the name of a new procedure, or modify the name of an existing procedure.
   - **Study Type**: Enter the type of study for which the new or modified procedure is intended.
   - **Gender**: Select the gender of the patient.
   - **Study Description**: Enter a brief, meaningful description of the study in which the new or modified procedure is used.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- **Transducer**: Select a transducer from a list of all of the transducers that are supported by the system.
- **Preset**: Select a preset from a list of all of the presets that are available for the selected transducer.

NOTE

To link a custom clinical procedure to a modality worklist patient, the custom procedure's **Procedure Name** must match the patient's **Study Description** code.

6. Click **Save** and then touch **Close**.

To use the new custom procedure, see “Selecting a Custom Procedure” on page 246.

Selecting a Custom Procedure

Custom procedures are available from the **Patient Data** form.

NOTE

Custom procedures are linked to specific transducers. If the transducer required for the procedure is unconnected, procedures that use it do not appear in the **Procedure** menu.

1. Touch **Patient**.
2. In the **Clinical Procedure** section of the **Patient Data** form, select the custom procedure from the **Procedure** menu.
3. Click **Done**.
4. Start the exam.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Report Templates

Report templates let you easily customize patient reports. You can create custom report templates from existing system-defined report templates either on the ultrasound system or on a Windows PC. You can modify, delete, import, and export custom templates.

Custom report templates can be backed up and restored as part of the system's **Backup/ Restore** feature.

You can specify a report template as the default template for a particular application. For more information, see the system *Help*.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

7 Performing an Exam

This section guides you through procedures commonly used in performing patient exams with the system. These procedures include entering patient data; acquiring, annotating, and reviewing images; and making measurements and calculations.

NOTE

Have a backup system present during critical exams to ensure completion of the exam in the event that the primary system fails.

New Patient Exams

WARNING

Failing to end the current exam before starting a new exam can result in data being acquired and stored under the wrong patient name.

You start an exam by entering patient data into the system in one of the following ways:

- If the Modality Worklist feature is disabled or unused on your system, you enter patient data into the **Patient Data** form.
- If your system is connected to a DICOM network with the Modality Worklist feature enabled, you can select an exam to load patient data instead of entering that information manually. See “Selecting in the Worklist” on page 252.
- If you have a barcode scanner, you can enter data into the system by scanning a patient's barcode. See “Entering Patient Data from a Barcode” on page 233.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

If you want to start an exam without first entering patient data, you can select **Use Temporary ID** after you acquire an image. For more information, see “Temporary ID” on page 216 and “Starting Emergency Studies” on page 216.

The system uses a unique ID to identify each patient. You can enter an ID, or you can have the system create one automatically. Stored images, fetal growth graphs, and reports are stored based on the patient ID.

If the sonographer name needs to be different on images within the exam, end the current exam and append a new exam with the images from the new sonographer.

An accession number is an optional entry assigned to each patient file by an institution for internal information-management purposes.

The exam date is set by the system when you first acquire an image during the exam.

Entering Patient Data

If you are not using the worklist option, you start an exam by entering patient data into the system.

If you want to start an exam without first entering patient data, you can select **Use Temporary ID** after you acquire an image.

NOTE

You can clear all patient data from the **Patient Data** form by selecting **Clear**. Do not use this control unless you want to delete all of the patient data you have entered into the form.

NOTE

On the **Patient Data** tab of the **System Settings** setups, you can choose to display or hide the **Proceed to Protocol** control on the **Patient Data** form.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

1. Touch **Patient**.
2. On the **Patient Data** form, type the patient information. To move your cursor through the form, use any of the following:
   - Use the **Tab** key or the **Enter** key to move the cursor from field to field.
   - In the **Comments** and **Study Description** fields, press **Shift**+**Enter** to move to the next line.

   To delete text from a field, highlight the text and use **Delete** or **Backspace**, or press **Erase** on the control panel.
3. For **Study Type**, select the study you will be performing. It is important to select the correct study type at this time. Selecting a study type after you have entered patient data and exited the **Patient Data** form does not update the report with the correct study type.
4. Enter the pertinent study information for the patient.
5. If you have created a custom procedure for this patient, select the custom procedure from the **Procedure** menu. (For information about custom procedures, see "Custom Procedures" on page 245.)
6. Do one of the following:
   - To begin a new exam, click **Done**.
   - To select and begin a protocol, click **Proceed to Protocol**.

Manually Editing OB Dates

The **LMP**, **Conception**, or **Established Due Date** (EDD) data can be used to generate fetal growth percentiles or SDs and all trending data during a patient's OB exam. These dates must be correct to ensure that correct percentiles, deviations, and trending data are generated. It is important to note the following:

- To ensure an accurate gestational age (GA), you must enter a **Conception** *or* an **LMP** date *or* an **Established Due Date** in the **Patient Data** form at the start of every OB exam. Those dates are not saved in the patient's data.
- If an **LMP** or a **Conception** date is entered, the **EDD(c)** is calculated, and the system uses the GA generated from the **LMP** or **LMP(c)** date to calculate the fetal growth percentiles or SDs.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- If the **Established Due Date** is entered manually, the **LMP(c)** date is calculated, and the system uses the GA calculated from the **LMP(c)** date to calculate the fetal growth percentiles or SDs.
- If the **Established Due Date** is entered manually, the **LMP** and **Conception** fields are no longer available.

NOTE

The **Established Due Date** supersedes the **EDD(c)**.

NOTE

If the **LMP** field is unavailable in a **Patient Data** form for OB exams, then the **LMP** field is unavailable for the same patient's Breast, Fetal Heart, and GYN exams and reports.

1. Start a new exam for the patient.
2. Complete the **New Patient Information** section of the **Patient Data** form.
3. In the **Clinical Procedure** section, for **Study Type**, select **OB**.
4. Enter new dates in the **LMP** or **Conception** field, *or* the **Established Due Date** field, enter the new data, and then click **Done**.

Selecting in the Worklist

If your modality worklist supports it, the **Additional Info** tab in the **Worklist** tab on the **Patient Data** form includes the following read-only information, available after you select a patient in the worklist:

- **Requested Procedure ID**
- **Code Meaning (Requested Procedure)**
- **Code Meaning (Scheduled Procedure)**

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- **Procedure Step Description**
- **Other Patient IDs**
- **Modality**

1. Touch **Patient**.
2. On the **Patient Data** form, click the **Worklist** tab.
3. On the worklist, select the exam you want, and click **Close**.

The system loads the patient information, and you are ready to begin an exam for that patient.

Searching in the Worklist

If necessary, you can search for a specific exam by using **Patient Search** on the **Patient Data** form.

NOTE

If you create a query for a Russian (Cyrillic) patient name on a PACS, storage device, or worklist server that is not configured with the Specified Character Set attribute for Russian (Cyrillic) characters, the patient name is displayed incorrectly. To perform such a query, use the patient ID or accession number instead. The Russian character set is applied to the patient name and other results information that you retrieve and upload to the system from a query.

1. Touch **Patient**, and then click the **Worklist** tab.
2. To search for a patient by exam date, click **Search**.
3. To further specify the date criteria, do one of the following:
   - Select the **Exam Date**.
   - Select **Today**; select **±** (plus or minus), **+**, or **–**; and then select the number of days.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

You can also search for a patient by last name, patient ID, modality, accession number, or procedure ID.

4. Click **Search**.
5. Select the patient from the worklist.
6. Click **Done**.

Temporary ID

Use the temporary ID feature to start an exam quickly. This feature allows you to perform an exam without first entering patient data. When you select this feature, the system enters unique, temporary placeholders for the patient's last name and ID. Using the temporary ID feature allows you to perform an exam as you would normally.

When you use the temporary ID workflow, images can be sent to a PACS or to a DICOM printer before entering actual patient data, if the system is configured to send or print images as you scan.

For an exam started with a temporary ID, edit patient data before ending the exam. For information on editing patient data, see the *Help*. After the exam is ended, you cannot change patient data. When the patient data is changed, all images are automatically resent to any local printers that they were previously sent to.

If your system is connected to a DICOM Worklist Server, you can load patient data to replace the temporary ID data. For information on replacing a patient with a modality worklist patient, see the *Help*.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

If you have configured a DICOM Performed Procedure Step server, PPS messages are sent for the temporary ID. If you edit patient data before you end the exam, PPS "discontinue" messages are sent for the temporary ID.

You can print images before you enter patient data (if the system is configured to print images as you scan), but those images are labeled only with the temporary ID.

Hiding Patient Name and ID on Images

WARNING

Images printed without the patient name and ID could be incorrectly associated with another patient. One way to alleviate this risk is to configure the DICOM printer so that the patient data that is included in the header of the image file is printed along with the image. However, some printers do not support that feature.

NOTE

If the intent of hiding the patient name and ID is patient privacy, be aware that if the original file name includes the patient name, you will need to rename the file when you export it.

The patient name and ID are displayed in the patient bar, which is outside of the image area and not acquired in an image. However, patient information is overlaid on to an image when it is printed. To hide the patient name and ID on the printed image and the display, touch **Utilities**, and then touch **Hide Patient Info** on the **System** tab. All other information displayed in the patient bar (time, institution name, and so on) remains in the overlay and is included on the printed image.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

To retain patient data on exported images, see “Retaining Patient Data on Exported Images” on page 256.

Retaining Patient Data on Exported Images

You can set the following patient information to display automatically at the top of exported exam images by selecting **Burn Patient Information Into Images** in the **Acquisition/Capture** setups:

- Patient name
- Date of birth
- ID
- Gender
- Acquisition date and time
- Performed by information
- Institution name
- System model

NOTE

To ensure that all of the header information is included when you select **Burn Patient Information Into Images**, be sure to deselect **Fixed Length of Printed and Acquired Patient Info Fields** on the **Header** tab in **System Settings**.

Selecting a Transducer

When you turn on the system, the system initializes the default transducer and preset. If the default transducer is not connected, or if no transducer is set as the default, the system initializes the transducer that is in the leftmost receptacle. For information on setting a default transducer, see “Setting the Default Transducer and Preset” on page 236.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

You can connect or disconnect a transducer during live imaging without damaging the transducer or the system.

1. Touch the transducer name to select it.
2. Touch the preset that you want to use.

After you select the preset, the system calibrates the transducer, enables the transducer for operation, and updates system status to reflect the transducer type and the preset you selected.

Imaging Modes

Your ultrasound system offers a set of imaging modes to accommodate a variety of imaging applications in 2D, 3D/4D, M-mode (including Anatomical M-mode), pulsed-wave Doppler, continuous-wave Doppler, Color Doppler, Color Power Angio (CPA) Imaging, Tissue Doppler Imaging, Harmonic imaging (tissue and contrast), and Elastography modes.

NOTE

Some modes are available on your system only if the corresponding option has been purchased and installed.

Capturing Images and Loops

You can capture and save a single frame or a cineloop sequence. The captured frame or cineloop sequence is saved in the patient study, and a thumbnail of it is available in the live imaging display and the **Review** display. Images are automatically exported across the network, either when you capture or print an image, or when you end an exam, depending on your selection for **Send Images/Clips** on the **Acquisition/Capture** tab in the **Acquisition/Capture** setups.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Use the **Freeze** control to stop and start system image acquisition and update. Pressing **Freeze** results in the system entering cineloop pause and assigning the trackball to manual cineloop review (frame-by-frame).

During acquisition, a spinning hourglass icon appears at the bottom of the display. When the capture is complete, a thumbnail of the image is displayed.

Do one of the following:

- To capture a single image, press **Freeze** and then press the **Acquire** control that is configured to capture single images.
- To capture a cineloop sequence, while in live imaging or while reviewing a cineloop sequence, press the **Acquire** control that is configured to capture cineloop sequences. Capturing during live imaging saves prospective or retrospective frames, as specified in **Live Capture Type** in the setups. A prospective capture captures a specified acquired loop length. A retrospective capture captures a specified loop length that was acquired previously. A retrospective capture captures a loop that ends when you press the **Acquire** control. Capturing while reviewing a cineloop sequence saves all retrospective frames in the cineloop sequence.

You can configure the **Acquire** controls in the **Acquisition/Capture** setups. By default, the **Acquire** controls behave as follows:

- **Acquire 1** captures single frames when the image is frozen and captures loops when the image is live.
- **Acquire 2** captures single frames, regardless of the imaging state.
- **Acquire 3** captures single frames, regardless of the imaging state.

However, if an **Acquire** control is set to acquire a still frame, you can use it to acquire the frame without freezing the image.

For information on configuring the **Acquire** controls, see “Configuring Acquire Controls” on page 185.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

If you press **Acquire 1** in a non-simultaneous mode while a live M-mode or Doppler trace is active, you capture a cineloop sequence. If you press **Acquire 1** in a simultaneous mode, you capture a single image.

NOTE

When an image is captured, you will hear a beep to confirm that the loop or image was saved in the patient's study. Do not press **Review** until you hear the beep.

NOTE

If you attempt to capture a loop that was imported from media, only a frame of the loop is captured and displayed in the appending exam.

Annotation

You can place text labels and arrows on an image to identify anatomical structures and locations. You can also annotate an image with a body marker graphic that indicates the part of the anatomy that you are scanning.

You can use the **Label Key Behavior** setting on the **Display** tab in the **System Settings** setups to change the behavior when **Label** is pressed to either display or hide the **Labels** tab or to bring each subpage to the front.

Adding Labels

1. Press **Label**.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

If you press a trackball button, unfreeze the image, or change the imaging mode or settings that affect the trackball assignment, annotation mode goes into standby. To return to annotation, press **Label**.

2. Use the trackball to position the text cursor on the display, or touch **Home** to return it to the home location.
3. Do any of the following:
   - To add text, type the text that you want to appear on the display.
   - To display predefined labels, touch a label control to display its text.
   - To display an arrow, touch the **Arrow** soft key, position the arrow with the trackball, and then click to fix the position. (If you add an arrow in MaxVue and then exit MaxVue, the system removes the arrow. To retain arrows on the image, place them in standard view.)
   - To erase an arrow, touch **Erase Arrow** or **Erase Last**. **Erase Last** removes arrows from the display starting with the last arrow added.
   - To erase the last word typed, touch **Erase Last**. **Erase Last** removes any arrows on the display before removing words, and then it removes words, starting with the last word added.
   - To erase the current line of the annotation display, touch **Erase Line**.
   - To erase all labels and arrows, touch **Erase All**.
   - To move the text cursor to the home position, touch **Home**.
   - To set a new home position, position the cursor and touch **Set Home**.
   - To exit annotation mode, press and hold **Label**.
   - To use the **Erase** control to erase annotations, see the *Help*.
   - To use text replace, see the *Help*.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

You can set the system to erase all text annotations on unfreeze: On the **Utilities** touch screen, under **System**, touch **Erase Text Annotations on Unfreeze**, or in the **System Settings** setups, on the **Display** tab, select the setting.

Adding Labels Using the Keyboard

You can add labels using the touch screen keyboard. You can manually format the annotation labels you add using the keyboard.

1. Press **Label**.
2. Touch **Keyboard**.
3. Use the trackball to position the text cursor on the display.
4. Type the text that you want to add. To center labels or improve line breaks, you can use spaces before and after the words that you type.
5. To erase text, use the **Backspace** key.
6. To remove text, touch **Erase Last**, **Erase All**, or **Erase Line**.
7. When finished, press **Label** again to remove the text cursor.

NOTE

You can set the system to erase all text annotations on unfreeze: On the **Utilities** touch screen, under **System**, touch **Erase Text Annotations on Unfreeze**, or in the **System Settings** setups, on the **Display** tab, select the setting.

Adding an Image Title

You can add a title to the image display.

1. Press **Label**.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

2. Touch **Keyboard**.
3. Touch **Title**.
4. Type the text that you want to add for the title.
5. To erase text, use the **Backspace** key.
6. When you are finished, touch **Title** again.

Displaying Body Markers

NOTE

During Review, the **Body Markers** touch screen is available only when **1-up** is selected for **Layout**. You can add body markers and system-provided labels to single frame images and loops in Review. You can type text in single frame images in Review.

1. Press **Label**.
2. Touch **Body Markers** to display the body markers for the current transducer and preset.
3. Touch a body marker control to put the corresponding body marker on the display in the home location or to replace an existing body marker.
4. Use the trackball to position the transducer scan plane indicator on the body marker. Turn **Rotate Probe** to change the orientation of the transducer scan plane indicator.
5. Do any of the following:
   - To move the marker, press **Body Mark** and use the trackball to move the body marker, and then press **Label** or **Probe Mark** to release it.
   - To resize the marker, turn **Body Mark Size**.
   - To resize the transducer scan plane indicator on the body marker, turn **Probe Mark Size**.
   - To remove a body marker, touch **Erase Body Mark**.
   - To move the text cursor to the home position, touch **Home**.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- To set a new home position, position the cursor and touch **Set Home**.
- To close the **Body Markers** touch screen, touch another tab or press and hold **Label**.

Recording

You can record live imaging to a local DVD recorder and simultaneously record comments. You can play back recordings on other DVD players. Playback is not supported on the system.

NOTE

Before you can record comments, the microphone must be enabled (on the **Utilities** tab, under **DVR**).

Using the DVD Recorder

NOTE

Use only DVD-R media in the Sony HVO-550MD DVD recorder.

NOTE

Always format a new disc before using it with the DVD recorder. Also, Philips recommends reformatting a used disc before using it with the DVD recorder.

1. To turn on the DVD recorder, press  on the front panel.
2. To insert a disc, press **OPEN/CLOSE** (on the recorder front panel), place a disc in the tray, and press **OPEN/CLOSE** again.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

3. To record, touch **DVR** on the touch screen and use any of the following controls on either the **DVR** touch screen or the DVD recorder:
   -  (Stop) to stop the recording
   -  (Record) to start recording
   -  (Pause) to temporarily halt the recording
   -  (Eject) to stop the current recording mode and eject the media
4. To turn the microphone on or off, touch **Microphone**. The microphone is on when  appears in the icon list on the bottom of the display.

Printing

WARNING

Multi-image prints made on small-size paper are intended only for reference and should not be used for diagnostic purposes. Text annotation and scaling markers may not be visible on such prints.

You can print single-frame images and reports to a local printer, usually installed in the system, or to DICOM printers on a network.

Two print controls are available for printing images, **Print Screen** and **Alt Print**. The **Acquire 1**, **Acquire 2**, **Acquire 3**, **Acquire Screen**, and **Acquire Report** controls also have print capabilities associated with them. In the setups, you can assign each of these controls separately to one or more image printers. In addition, you can select whether the controls print the entire display or just the image area.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

If you print a monochrome image while a Chroma map is selected, the system sends the image to the color printer. Also, if you export a monochrome image while a Chroma map is selected, the system sends the image as a color image. This is normal. To ensure that black-and-white images are sent to the black-and-white printer, set **Chroma Map** to **Off**.

Printing in Live Imaging

You can print live or frozen images during an exam. To print using the **Acquire** control that is configured for printing, a printer must be assigned to those controls in the setups.

1. Display the live or frozen image you want to print.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Press the **Acquire** control that is configured for printing on the system control panel.
   - Touch **Alt Print** on the touch screen.
   - Touch **Print Screen** on the **Utilities** tab.

NOTE

If your print setting includes multiple images per page, the printer will not print an image until the total number is reached. For example, if you have a 2x2 format selected, the printer will not print the page until you have captured four images or, if the number captured is less than four, until the end of the exam.

Review

During or after an exam, you can use Review to examine and compare images acquired in the exam. You can also review multiple exams for one patient.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

In Review, you can look at the images or cineloop sequences that you stored. You can view, export, print, and delete the stored images. You can also perform analysis on images in Review. Images can be stored on the ultrasound system hard drive, on removable media, or on DICOM-compatible devices on a network. You can display images within an exam in several layouts and you can display images from different exams.

The system cannot display native data images exported from an ultrasound system of a different model and number. To view those images, use QLAB software instead.

Starting Review

NOTE

Make sure at least one transducer is connected to the system before you touch **Review**. Without a connected transducer, the system stops responding and requires a restart to continue functioning.

1. Touch **Review** to enter Review mode. You can also double-click a thumbnail image in an active exam to open that image in Review mode.
2. To return to live imaging, touch **Review** again or touch **Close**.

Navigating Thumbnails and Images

NOTE

When reviewing images of an exam loaded from the patient directory, thumbnails are unavailable in some circumstances. For example, exams copied from DVD to the hard drive may not have thumbnails, if the images they contain are no longer in their native format.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

In Review, you can view small images, called *thumbnails*. Thumbnails are located on the right side of the display. From these thumbnails, you can also display one or more images in their original format.

Do any of the following:

- To view a thumbnail full screen, double-click it. (If the image represents a 3D data set, it opens in 3D review mode.) To return to the review screen, double-click the full screen image or set **Layout** to **4-up**.
- To move up or down through available thumbnails quickly, drag the scroll bar (located on the right side of the thumbnails if there are more than eight thumbnails available).
- To jump to the page that contains the corresponding image, click a thumbnail.
- To move backward or forward through the available images, one page at a time, turn **Review Page**.
- To select an image, either click the image or click the number in its corresponding thumbnail.

Measurement and Analysis

The measurement tools appear on the touch screen. Touching a tool label on the touch screen launches the tool. (The labels of inactive tools are gray.)

Measurement tools provide measurements and derived calculations. Various methods are available for generating results. The two primary methods allow you to “measure then label” or “label then measure.” Either way, the results can appear on the display, on printed pages, and in patient reports, where they are available for your analysis.

The **Analysis** setups provide the configuration capability that allows you to create your own calculation lists, including collections, groups, measurements, and calculations. In addition, the measurements and calculations can be associated with system and custom tables and equations.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

The ultrasound system supports a number of measurement and quantification methods. The basic measurements report the size, speed, or duration of image data. The image data may be contained in a 2D ultrasound image, a Physio region, an M-mode trace, or a Doppler spectral trace. The accuracy of the measurement depends, in part, on the ability of the operator.

Measurements are available if the image scaling data is available. This prevents measurements on Doppler or M-mode still images in Review that do not include scaling information in the trace data, or on imported image loops that use different scaling parameters.

Measurements must be labeled for the results to appear in patient reports. Unlabeled measurements appear in the results but are not retained, unless they are associated with a labeled measurement.

Labeled measurements and calculations are stored in the patient data and report. The information is labeled according to the measurement or calculation label. Within the report, the information is organized by the calculations package. The values displayed can be the results of multiple measurements.

Calculations packages are system options that are associated with transducers and presets. A calculations package contains one or more collections that organize measurements and calculations into a coherent tool for diagnostic analysis. The **Calc Package** tab provides access to the various measurements and calculations in the available calculations packages.

The measurements and their derived calculations included with the calculations packages are based on medical references.

See the "References" section in the *Help.*

NOTE

Ensure that you follow current medical practices when identifying specific measurement points on an image.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Performing a 2D Depth Measurement

A 2D depth measurement uses a single caliper point to measure the distance between an area of interest and the skin line.

NOTE

Not all transducers display echoes at the skin line.

NOTE

You cannot measure 2D depth above the skin line.

1. Obtain the image that you want to measure and press **Freeze**.
2. Press or touch **Measure**, and then touch **Tools**.
3. Touch **2D Depth**. A caliper appears on the 2D image.
4. Use the trackball to position the caliper.
5. To complete the measurement, click **End**.

Performing a 2D Distance Measurement

A 2D distance measurement uses two calipers to measure the length of a straight line between the two points. You can set the display of the line in the setups.

1. Obtain the 2D image you want to measure and press **Freeze**.
2. Press or touch **Measure**, and then touch **Tools**.
3. Touch **Distance**.
4. Use the trackball to position the caliper for the first end point and click to anchor it.
5. Use the trackball to position the caliper for the second end point. The results update as the distance between the calipers changes.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

6. To complete the measurement, click **End**.

Measuring M-Mode Distance

1. Start M-mode by pressing the **M-mode** soft key, and then press the middle trackball button to update the M-mode display.
2. Obtain an M-mode display and press **Freeze**.
3. Press or touch **Measure**, and then touch **Tools**.
4. Touch **Distance**.
5. Use the trackball to position the vertical time caliper and press the left or right trackball button.
6. Use the trackball to position the horizontal depth caliper. The distance between the depth calipers appears in the results.
7. To make additional measurements, repeat step 5 and step 6.
8. To complete the measurements, click **End**.

Estimating the Doppler Velocity on a Sweeping Display

You can estimate the velocity on a live Doppler image.

1. Press **PW**.
2. Press the middle trackball button to update the Doppler display.
3. Obtain the Doppler image you want to measure (a spectral waveform).
4. Press or touch **Measure**, and then touch **Tools**.
5. Touch **Distance**.
6. Use the trackball to position the horizontal cursor.
7. Use the Doppler scale to estimate the velocity.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Measuring Then Labeling

The measure-then-label method of obtaining results uses caliper controls for making measurements, without first having to select measurement labels. These measurements are not explicitly associated with a report region and do not appear in the report unless associated with a labeled measurement.

After making a measurement, you can choose whether to assign the value to a label.

NOTE

The measurement will be lost if you unfreeze the image or change modes before you assign a label to it.

Obtaining a Typical Labeled Measurement

This general procedure describes how to measure by using a typical labeled measurement tool.

Guided or complex tools require specialized procedures, found in the *Help*.

1. Obtain the image you want to measure and press **Freeze**.
2. Press or touch **Measure**.
3. Do one or more of the following:
   - On the **Calc Package** tab of the touch screen, touch a collection and then a measurement label.
   - In the **Calc List**, click a collection and then click a measurement label.
4. If a set of associated measurements are required, touch or click a group label to display multiple measurement labels.
5. Touch or click a measurement label and make the measurement. First, the caliper or trace tool appears on the display. Then, as you make the measurement, the results and derived calculations appear in the results and are simultaneously added to the patient report.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

6. For each measurement label within a group, touch or click a label and make the measurement.
7. To complete the measurement, click **End**.

Ending an Exam

WARNING

Failing to end the current exam before starting a new exam can result in data being acquired and stored under the wrong patient name. If you turn off the system without ending the exam, the system pauses the exam before shutting down.

Each time you finish an exam, you must end the exam to save images, reports, and other exam data. You can end an exam in the current exam display or with the current exam open in the Review display. You cannot end a paused exam while in the Patient Directory.

You will not be able to end the exam until the system has saved exam data for the current exam. (The system saves exam data when you acquire an image.) Ending an exam stores all exam data, clears the **Patient Data** form, and prepares for the next exam.

You can configure the system to end exams after a period of system inactivity. For instructions, see the *Help*.

When the exam is complete, touch **End Exam**.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

8 Transducers

The transducer is the most important factor in image quality. Optimal imaging cannot be obtained without the correct transducer. The system is optimized for use based on your transducer selection.

For information on connecting transducers, see “Connecting Transducers” on page 223. For more information on caring for and maintaining transducers, see *Care and Cleaning of Ultrasound Systems and Transducers* and *Disinfectants and Cleaning Solutions for Ultrasound Systems and Transducers*.

Transducer Safety

WARNING

Use only Philips transducers and Philips-approved biopsy guides, covers, brackets, supplies, components, and accessories. Other brands may not properly fit Philips transducers. Improper installation may result in patient injury.

WARNING

Always remove the transducer from the patient before defibrillation.

WARNING

Before defibrillation, if you cannot remove the transducer from the patient, always disconnect invasive transducers that remain in contact with the patient from the system.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

To limit potential harm when scanning neonatal, pediatric, and medicated patients, minimize the time spent imaging at temperatures above 41°C (106°F).

CAUTION

When handling a transducer, do not bump the transducer on hard surfaces.

The system limits patient contact temperature to 43°C (109°F), and acoustic output values to their respective U.S. Food and Drug Administration limits. A power-protection circuit protects against over-current conditions. If the power monitor protection circuit senses an over-current condition, then the drive voltage to the transducer is shut off immediately, preventing overheating of the transducer surface and limiting acoustic output. Validation of the power protection circuit is done under normal system operation.

Transducers other than transesophageal (TEE) transducers and Doppler transducers are rated minimum IPX7 in accordance with IEC 60529. TEE transducers are rated minimum IPX1 (control area) and IPX7 (endoscope area) in accordance with IEC 60529. Doppler transducers are rated minimum IPX1.

Selecting a Transducer

When you turn on the system, the system initializes the default transducer and preset. If the default transducer is not connected, or if no transducer is set as the default, the system initializes the transducer that is in the leftmost receptacle. For information on setting a default transducer, see “Setting the Default Transducer and Preset” on page 277.

You can connect or disconnect a transducer during live imaging without damaging the transducer or the system.

1. Touch the transducer name to select it.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

2. Touch the preset that you want to use.

After you select the preset, the system calibrates the transducer, enables the transducer for operation, and updates system status to reflect the transducer type and the preset you selected.

Supported Transducers

For the systems that support each transducer, see the following table.

NOTE

Some transducers may not be supported on every version of a system.

Transducers and Supported Affiniti Systems

Transducer	Affiniti 70	Affiniti CVx	Affiniti 50	Affiniti 30
3D9-3v	X	--	X	X
BP10-5ec	X	--	X	--
C5-1	X	X	X	--
C6-2	X	X	X	X
C8-5	X	X	X	X
C9-2	X	X	--	--
C9-4v	X	--	X	X
C10-3v	X	--	--	--
C10-4ec	X	--	X	--
D2cwc	X	X	X	X

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Transducer	Affiniti 70	Affiniti CVx	Affiniti 50	Affiniti 30
D2tcd	X	X	X	--
D5cwc	X	X	X	X
eL18-4	X	X	--	--
eL18-4 EMT	X	X	--	--
L12-3	X	X	X	--
L12-3ERGO	X	X	X	--
L12-4	X	X	X	X
L12-5 50	X	X	X	X
L15-7io	X	X	X	--
L18-5	X	X	X	--
mC7-2	X	--	X	--
S4-2	X	X	X	X
S5-1	X	X	X	--
S7-3t	X	X	X	--
S8-3	X	X	X	X
S8-3t	X	X	--	--
S12-4	X	X	X	--
V6-2	X	--	X	X
V9-2	X	--	X	--
VL13-5	X	--	--	--
X5-1	X	X	--	--

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Transducer	Affiniti 70	Affiniti CVx	Affiniti 50	Affiniti 30
X7-2t	X	X	X	X
X8-2t	X	X	--	--

Setting the Default Transducer and Preset

You can set a default transducer and preset so that each time the system is turned on, that transducer and preset are initiated automatically. The system selects the default transducer regardless of which receptacle it is connected to. If the default transducer is not connected when the system is turned on, the system initiates the transducer connected to the leftmost connector and the first available preset for that transducer.

1. Touch the name of the transducer you want to use.
2. Touch the preset you want.
3. Touch the transducer name a second time.
4. Touch **Set Default**.

xMATRIX Array Transducers

xMATRIX array transducer technology provides volume acquisitions of the beating heart with remarkable image quality. You can use these transducers to acquire two planes simultaneously from the same heartbeat. The system's multi-directional beam steering lets you select unlimited planes in all directions, so you can get the precise view you want, with no degradation in image quality.

The following xMATRIX array transducers are available with this system:

- X5-1
- X7-2t
- X8-2t

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Acoustic Artifacts

The transducer adds its own signature to the echo information in the form of beam width effects, axial resolution limitations, and frequency characteristics. The control choices made by the sonographer that affect amplification, signal processing, and echo signal display can lead to significant differences in the displayed appearance of echo data. Following is a brief discussion of acoustic artifacts. An understanding of the physical basis for the production of signals displayed on ultrasound images is helpful in minimizing artifacts on images and interpreting the results of studies.

An artifact is an echo displayed in a different position than its corresponding reflector in the body. Artifacts can also be caused by intervening tissue properties. Artifacts can originate from external noise, reverberations, multi-path reflections, or misadjusted equipment. They can also come from the ultrasonic beam geometry and unusual changes in beam intensity. Artifacts and their manifestations are listed below, and following are some definitions of various artifacts.

- Added objects displayed as speckle, section thickness, reverberation, mirror image, comet tail, or ring down
- Missing objects due to poor resolution
- Incorrect object brightness due to shadowing or enhancement
- Incorrect object location due to refraction, multi-path reflections, side lobes, grating lobes, speed error, or range ambiguity
- Incorrect object size due to poor resolution, refraction, or speed error
- Incorrect object shape due to poor resolution, refraction, or speed error

Acoustic saturation occurs when received signals reach a system's high-amplitude limit. At that point the system becomes unable to distinguish or display signal intensities. At the point of saturation, increased input will not increase output.

Aliasing occurs when the detected Doppler frequency exceeds the Nyquist limit. It is characterized on the spectral display by the Doppler peaks going off the display, top or bottom, and then continuing on the other side of the baseline. On the Color display an immediate change in color from one Nyquist limit to the other is seen.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Comet tail is a form of reverberation artifact produced when two or more strong reflectors are close together and have a high propagation speed. In this case, sound does not travel directly to a reflector and back to the transducer; and a strong linear echo appears at the reflector and extends deeper than the reflector.

Enhancement is an increased relative amplitude of echoes caused by an intervening structure of low attenuation.

Focal enhancement, also known as **focal banding**, is the increased intensity in the focal region that appears as a brightening of the echoes on the display.

Mirror imaging artifact is most commonly seen around the diaphragm; this artifact results from sound reflecting off another reflector and back.

Mirroring is the appearance of artifacts on a spectral display when there is improper separation of forward and reverse signal processing channels. Consequently, strong signals from one channel mirror into the other.

Multi-path positioning and **refraction** artifacts describe the situation in which the paths to and from a reflector are different. The longer the sound takes traveling to or from a reflector, the greater the axial error in reflector positioning (increased range). Refraction and multi-path positioning errors are normally relatively small and contribute to general degradation of the image rather than to gross errors in object location.

Propagation speed errors occur when the assumed value for propagation speed by the ultrasound system is incorrect. If the actual speed is greater than that assumed, the calculated distance to a reflector is too small, and the reflector will be displayed too far from the transducer. Speed error can cause a structure to be displayed with incorrect size and shape.

Range ambiguity can occur when reflections are received after the next pulse is transmitted. In ultrasound imaging, it is assumed that for each pulse produced, all reflections are received before the next pulse is sent out. The ultrasound system calculates the distance to a reflector from the echo arrival time assuming that all echoes were generated by the last emitted pulse. The maximum depth to be imaged unambiguously by the system determines its maximum pulse repetition frequency.

Reverberation is the continuing reception of a particular signal because of reverberation rather than reflection from a particular acoustic interface. This phenomenon is analogous to the effect created by mirrors positioned on opposite walls when an object, a head for instance, is placed

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

between the mirrors. The image of the head is reflected back and forth infinitely between the two mirrors, creating the optical illusion of multiple heads. Reverberations are easily identifiable, because they are equally spaced on the display.

Scattering is the diffuse, low-amplitude sound waves that occur when acoustic energy reflects off tissue interfaces smaller than a wavelength. In diagnostic ultrasound, Doppler signals come primarily from acoustic energy back-scattered from red blood cells.

Shadowing is the reduction in echo amplitude from reflectors that lie behind a strongly reflecting or attenuating structure. This phenomenon occurs when scanning a lesion or structure with an attenuation rate higher than that of the surrounding tissue. The lesion causes a decrease in beam intensity, which results in decreased echo signals from the structures beyond the lesion. Consequently, a dark cloud behind the lesion image forms on the display. This cloud, or shadow, is useful as a diagnostic clue.

Side lobes (from single-element transducers) and **grating lobes** (from array transducers) cause objects that are not directly in front of the transducer to be displayed incorrectly in lateral position.

Speckle appears as tissue texture close to the transducer but does not correspond to scatterers in tissue. It is produced by ultrasound wave interference and results in general image degradation.

Spectral broadening is a display phenomenon that occurs when the number of energy-bearing Fourier frequency components increases at any given point in time. As a consequence, the spectral display is broadened. Spectral broadening can indicate the disturbed flow caused by a lesion, and therefore it is important diagnostically. However, broadening can also result from interaction between flow and sample volume size, in which case it is an artifact.

Speed of sound artifacts occur if the sound propagation path to a reflector is partially through bone, and the speed of sound is greater than in the average soft tissue. Echo position registration artifacts will be produced. Reflectors appear closer to the transducer than their actual distance because of this greater speed of sound, resulting in a shorter echo transit time than for paths not containing bone.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Acoustic Artifacts in 3D Imaging

Acquisition, rendering, and editing artifacts are specific to 3D volume images. Acquisition artifacts are related to patient motion, organ motion, or position-sensing errors. Rendering artifacts include elimination of structures by limiting the region of interest boundaries, thresholding that eliminates structures, and adjacent structure artifacts that add additional information or hide structures. Editing artifacts result from data deleted from a rendered image.

Color and Color Power Angio artifacts relating to gain may also be confusing in rendered images. A color flash artifact can occur when the gain is set high and the transducer or patient moves. When the gain is set too high, the color ROI box fills with color flash. When the gain is set low, color bleed can occur. When the gain is set too low, insufficient color data renders the image undiagnosable.

Color gain, directional, and motion artifacts can present themselves in 3D imaging. Color and Color Power Angio gain artifacts are mainly related to the use of excessive gain resulting in random color patterns in the 3D image that might be interpreted as diagnostically significant. Directional artifacts are due to aliasing or directional confusion: The velocity range must be set properly, and the relationship between the transducer orientation and the flow vector must be understood. Patient motion can produce flash artifacts that are less obvious in 3D images than in 2D imaging.

Dropout and shadowing are present in 3D imaging although they are more difficult to recognize due to different and unfamiliar displays. Acoustic shadowing and other artifacts look very different when displayed in 3D volumes and may be more difficult to recognize than on standard 2D imaging. Those artifacts may produce apparent defects, such as limb abnormalities or facial clefts, where they are not present. Acquiring data from multiple orientations may avoid artifacts of this type.

Fetal limb deficit artifacts are specific to 3D volume images. Partially absent fetal limb bones have been demonstrated. One explanation for the missing limbs was shadowing caused by adjacent skeletal structures. Overcoming the limb deficit artifact can be accomplished by changing the transducer position and the acquisition plane.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Motion artifacts in 3D volumes can be caused by patient motion, fetal movement, cardiac motion, and movement of adjacent structures. Patient motion can produce flash artifacts that are more obvious in 3D images than in 2D imaging.

Pseudoclefting and pseudonarrowing artifacts may be related to limb deficit artifacts. Artifacts may be present in 3D imaging of the fetal face. Being aware of pseudoclefting of the fetal face and pseudonarrowing of the fetal spine can help the sonographer understand and identify these artifacts. As with 2D imaging, it is important to verify putative physical defects by using additional images and other modalities.

Resolution, attenuation, and propagation artifacts are all common to 3D imaging. Careful scrutiny of the original 2D images is necessary to identify and preclude these types of artifacts from the 3D volume image.

Non-TEE Transducer Temperature Sensing

Some non-TEE transducers include the Auto-Cool safety feature to protect the patient and the transducer from excessive heat, which can be caused by long transducer use in specific modes and applications. The transducers contain built-in temperature sensors that monitor the temperature of the patient-applied part to prevent potential burning of skin.

The Auto-Cool warning appears when the temperature approaches the error threshold. When the temperature reaches the maximum temperature allowed, scanning stops and a message appears saying that the Auto-Cool is in progress. When the temperature drops below the threshold, the system starts scanning, and the warning message disappears.

For information on temperature sensing for TEE transducers, see “TEE Temperature Sensing” on page 364.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Auto-Cool Threshold Temperatures for Patient-Applied Part

Transducer	Warning Threshold Temperature	Error Threshold Temperature When Scanning Stops
eL18-4	42.0°C (107.6°F)	42.5°C (108.5°F)
eL18-4 EMT	42.0°C (107.6°F)	42.5°C (108.5°F)
X5-1	42.0°C (107.6°F)	43°C (109.4°F)

Ensuring Safe Non-TEE Transducer Temperatures

To ensure patient safety and to avoid unnecessary interruption while scanning, follow these suggestions for non-TEE transducers:

- Transducers heat up faster when scanning in the air than when scanning a patient. When the transducer is not in use, press **Freeze** to ensure the image is frozen.
- Select the shortest wait time for the **Auto Freeze** setting on the **Display** tab of the **System Settings** display in the setups (see “Setting the Auto Freeze Function” on page 217).
- If the Auto-Cool warning appears when you are using high acoustic power modes such as Color, Doppler, Live 3D, or Tissue Harmonic Imaging, temporarily switching to fundamental 2D mode or freezing the image can help cool the transducer.
- Temporarily reduce the acoustic output power. When you reduce the power, the image quality and Doppler sensitivity also decrease.

For information on ensuring safe temperatures for TEE transducers, see “Ensuring Safe TEE Temperatures” on page 365.

Transducer Covers

For procedures for using transducer covers, see the instructions provided with the covers.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

To prevent contamination by blood-borne pathogens, legally marketed sterile transducer covers with sterile ultrasound transmission gel are required for intraoperative applications, and during needle guidance and biopsy procedures. Protective covers are recommended for transesophageal, transrectal, and intravaginal procedures; in China and Japan, the covers are mandatory. Philips recommends the use of legally marketed sterile covers.

WARNING

Latex and talc are commonly used in sheaths marketed to help with infection control in transesophageal, endocavity, and intraoperative imaging applications and during needle guidance and biopsy procedures. Examine the packaging to confirm latex and talc content. Studies have shown that patients can experience allergic reactions with natural rubber latex. See the FDA Medical Alert, March 29, 1991, reprinted in "FDA Medical Alert on Latex" on page 68.

WARNING

In intraoperative applications, transducers that have undergone high-level disinfection must be used with sterile ultrasound transmission gel and a legally marketed sterile transducer cover.

WARNING

Inspect transducer covers before and after use.

WARNING

Do not apply the transducer cover until you are ready to perform the procedure.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

If an installed transducer cover is cut or contaminated before use, the transducer should be cleaned and disinfected or sterilized. Install a new transducer cover; for applications requiring sterile covers, install a new legally marketed sterile cover.

WARNING

If a sterile transducer cover becomes compromised during an intraoperative application involving a patient with transmissible spongiform encephalopathy, such as Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, follow the guidelines of the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and this document from the World Health Organization: WHO/CDS/ APH/2000/3, WHO Infection Control Guidelines for Transmissible Spongiform Encephalopathies. The transducers for your system cannot be decontaminated using a heat process.

WARNING

Sterile transducer covers are disposable and must not be reused.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

For more information on connecting transducers, see “Connecting Transducers” on page 223.
For more information on caring for and maintaining transducers, see *Care and Cleaning of Ultrasound Systems and Transducers* and *Disinfectants and Cleaning Solutions for Ultrasound Systems and Transducers*.

Ultrasound Transmission Gels

For proper transmission of the acoustic beam, use the ultrasound transmission gel supplied by or recommended by Philips, or another glycol-, glycerol-, or water-based acoustic coupling medium.

WARNING

Legally marketed sterile transducer covers with sterile ultrasound transmission gel are required for intraoperative applications, and during needle guidance and biopsy procedures.

CAUTION

Do not use lotion-based products, mineral oil, or water-based gels that contain mineral oil. Such products may damage the transducer and void the warranty.

CAUTION

Do not use hand sanitizing gels.

CAUTION

Do not apply the transducer gel until you are ready to perform the procedure. Transducers should not be left soaking in gel.

CAUTION

Gels listed here are recommended because of their chemical compatibility with product materials.

Some recommended gels include:

- Aquasonic 100
- Aquasonic Clear
- Carbogel-ULT

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- EcoVue
- Scan
- Ultra Phonic

For additional compatibility information, call Philips at 800-722-9377 (North America) or your local Philips representative (outside North America).

Transducer Transport

Transport used transducers in a spill-proof, closed container with appropriate contamination labeling. To avoid damage to the lens, ensure that the container holds the transducer in place. During transportation, prevent all patient-contact parts from contacting non-patient-contact parts.

When you transport cleaned and disinfected transducers, ensure that any containers used for transport are also cleaned and disinfected before you place the clean transducers in the containers.

For more information, see “Storage for Transport” on page 288.

Transducer Storage

Use the appropriate guidelines for storing transducers for transport, and daily and long-term storage.

CAUTION

Before storing transducers, ensure that they are thoroughly dry. If it is necessary to dry the transducer lens (acoustic window) after cleaning, use a soft, dry, lint-free cloth and a gentle blotting motion. Aggressive wiping or scrubbing can damage the lens.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Storage for Transport

If a carrying case is provided with your transducer, always use the carrying case to transport the transducer from one site to another. Follow these guidelines to properly store transducers for transport:

- Make sure that the transducer is clean and disinfected before placing it in the case to avoid contaminating the foam that lines the carrying case.
- Place the transducer in the case carefully to prevent kinking of the cable.
- Before closing the lid, make sure no part of the transducer is protruding from the case.
- Wrap the case in plastic material containing air-filled pockets (such as Bubble Wrap material), and pack the wrapped case in a cardboard carton.
- To avoid damaging the shaft or steering mechanism of TEE transducers, do not bend or coil the flexible shaft of the transducer in less than a 0.3-m (1-ft) diameter circle.

Daily and Long-Term Storage

Follow these guidelines to protect your transducer:

- Always store transducers in the transducer holders on the side of your system or on a securely mounted wall rack when you are not using them.
- Ensure the transducer holders are clean before storing transducers (see *Care and Cleaning of Ultrasound Systems and Transducers*).
- When storing transducers, use the cable-management clips, if available, to secure the transducer cable.
- Avoid storing transducers in areas of temperature extremes or in direct sunlight.
- Store transducers separately from other instruments to avoid inadvertent transducer damage.
- Before storing transducers, make sure they are thoroughly dry.
- For TEE transducers, be sure the distal tip is straight and protected before storing the transducer.
- Never store a TEE transducer in the carrying case, except to transport it.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Transducer Maintenance

For information about transducer maintenance, see “Transducer Care” on page 399, *Care and Cleaning of Ultrasound Systems and Transducers*, and *Disinfectants and Cleaning Solutions for Ultrasound Systems and Transducers*.

Transducer Electrical Safety Testing

Electrical safety tests should be performed regularly to ensure patient safety. These tests are designed to:

- Verify the integrity of the insulating layers of all transducers.
- Detect abnormalities that could prove dangerous to a patient or an operator and to ensure that system safety and functions have not been compromised.

Electrical safety tests also should be performed when a transducer has been perforated or damaged.

This subsection provides two electrical leakage current tests for transducers:

- To check a transducer for electrical leakage while it is connected to the ultrasound system while the system sends normal operating voltages to the transducer, see “Transducer Leakage Current Test (Source)” on page 296.
- To check a transducer directly for electrical leakage, see “Transducer Isolation Leakage Current Test (Sink)” on page 303.

This subsection also provides a stand-alone test for TEE transducers (“Stand-Alone TEE Transducer Leakage Test” on page 296).

WARNING

Only a technically qualified person should perform the procedures.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

There is a possible risk of infection from handling transducers that have been cleaned improperly. Before testing the transducers, clean the transducer according to the instructions provided on the "Transducer Care" website: www.philips.com/transducercare

NOTE

Before proceeding with any transducer test, thoroughly inspect the transducer. If the transducer is a TEE transducer, check that its steering controls are working properly.

NOTE

Stand-alone test devices can perform indication-of-leakage tests *only*. The devices cannot diagnose the problem or provide a mitigation. Any stand-alone test failure indicates the need for complete safety testing of the transducer with the ultrasound system. For assistance, contact the authorized Philips representative.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Preparing to Test

Before performing the safety procedures, check the following.

System

- Unplug all peripherals (network connections, printers, monitors, laptops, and so on) from the system before beginning any safety test. Connected peripherals may cause erroneous results.
- If the system has a ground bonding strap, a ground bonding brush, or an antistatic chain, insulate the strap, the brush, or the chain from the floor with an insulated sheet or another insulated item, such as a notebook.

Philips

- If the system being tested uses batteries during normal system operation, install the batteries to support the system during safety testing.
- Inspect:
  - System enclosure for damage, such as exposed metal parts or circuitry
  - External cabling for wear, cracks, holes, and bare wires
  - Power connectors for damage or missing pins

Transducers

For all transducers, check for damage to the connector, the cable, the housing, or the lens.

For TEE transducers, check for bite marks or damage to the transducer shaft.

NOTE

If you suspect damage to the TEE transducer shaft, perform the TEE transducer leakage test ("Stand-Alone TEE Transducer Leakage Test" on page 296). This procedure will assist in determining if the hole has compromised the electrical isolation of the shaft.

Equipment

Calibrate the safety analyzers or digital multimeters for the variables directly involved with safety procedures, specifically:

- Voltage (V - volts)
- Current (I - amperes)
- Resistance (R - ohms)
- Time (s - seconds)

Ensure that the safety analyzers or digital multimeters are equipped internally with the required measuring device (MD = IEC 60601-1) that is appropriate for conducting loaded/ weighted patient leakage current tests.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

If equipment calibration fails, contact the authorized Philips representative for calibration or repair. For information, see “Customer Service” on page 28.

Transducer Testing Equipment

The following tools are required for transducer safety tests:

- Electrical measuring device (approved by IEC or AAMI), such as
  - Fluke DALE 601 electrical safety analyzer
  - Fluke ESA620 electrical safety analyzer
  - Fluke ESA612 electrical safety analyzer
  - Fluke 177 digital multimeter (for general electrical measurements)
- Nonconductive test container (Recommended: Fluke 2558630, Cleaning/Testing basin)
- Test lead (Recommended: Fluke 2801776, Conductive Probe)
- Adapter cable for safety analyzer (Optional: Fluke 3472633, Ultrasound Test Cable Adapter)
- 0.9% saline solution. If 0.9% saline solution is not available, mix 9 g (0.32 oz) of table salt per 1 liter (33.8 oz) of tap water. You can also use one of the approved conductive disinfectants listed in *Disinfectants and Cleaning Solutions for Ultrasound Systems and Transducers* on the "Transducer Care" website:
  www.philips.com/transducercare

NOTE

This testing information is intended to provide general information about how to perform electrical safety tests pertinent to Philips ultrasound systems and transducers. To use the specific safety analyzer or digital multimeter, follow the user information provided by the equipment manufacturer.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Transducer Testing Background

The transducer safety tests include figures, procedures, and results. The figures are generic and pertain to multiple safety analyzers and digital multimeters. As expected, operation of various test equipment differs due to control locations and functions. For information on safety analyzers or digital multimeters, see the user information provided by the equipment manufacturer.

Figures

The safety test figures may include the following symbols.

Figure Symbols

Symbol	Definition	Notes
	Indicates that the Type CF applied part has an isolated patient connection.	Type CF devices (transducers and test leads) typically are used close to the heart and have stricter limits than Type BF devices. Look for the symbol on the transducer connector or the ECG module. ECG modules are required to provide Type CF protection. The protection is not in the ECG leads, so it must be in the modules. ECG modules are rated Type CF.
	Indicates that the Type CF applied part has an isolated, defibrillation-proof patient connection.	
	Indicates that the Type BF applied part has an isolated patient connection.	Type BF devices (transducers and test leads) have less-stringent limits than Type CF devices due to how they are used on the patient. Look for this symbol on the device.
	Indicates that the Type BF applied part has an isolated, defibrillation-proof patient connection.	

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Symbol	Definition	Notes
	Indicates that the Type B applied part has a non-isolated patient connection.	The Type B device symbol is used primarily on older transducers. To avoid damaging the transducer, do not perform isolation tests on transducers with this symbol.
	Indicates the alternating current (AC) voltage power source.	--
	Indicates the placement of the safety analyzer or digital multimeter.	--
	Indicates the ground lug on the ultrasound system.	The ground lug is a thick metal pin, commonly found on the back of the ultrasound system near the power supply.
	Indicates current.	--
	Indicates that a circuit is open.	--
	Indicates that a circuit is closed.	--

Procedures

The procedures are generic and pertain to multiple safety analyzers or digital multimeters.

Tables

The tables identify the conditions, limits, and results for each procedure.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

The limits referenced in the safety procedures are prescribed by the IEC. Local regulations may require additional tests. Measured values cannot exceed the IEC limits.

Transducer IPX Ratings

Philips transducers are designed to conform to the International Protection (IPX) ratings of the IEC 60529 standard, which classifies and rates a device for the degree of protection its enclosures provide against external influences and intrusion.

During testing, the transducer is immersed in a saline solution or an approved conductive disinfectant. Therefore, the transducer must meet the minimum IPX ratings outlined in the following table.

Transducer IPX Ratings

IPX Rating (Minimum)[1]	Definition	Compliant Area of Transducer
IPX1	Indicates that the device is protected against the effects of vertically falling water.	Control area of TEE transducers
IPX7	Indicates that the device is protected against the effects of immersion.	• Endoscope area of TEE transducers • Entire surface area (*excluding* the connector) of all other transducers, including Doppler transducers

1. All transducers are rated in accordance with IEC 60529, “Degrees of Protection Provided by Enclosures (IP Code)."

To determine the IPX rating for a transducer, check the IPX symbol on the transducer connector. For more information about IPX symbols, see “Symbols” on page 50.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Stand-Alone TEE Transducer Leakage Test

If your institution requires IAC accreditation, you are required to conduct a stand-alone test on TEE transducers before every use.

NOTE

To perform the stand-alone test, see the user information provided by the equipment manufacturer.

The stand-alone test uses a pass/fail threshold of 185 µA. If the TEE transducer fails the stand-alone test, complete the following:

- Thoroughly inspect the transducer for physical damage.
- Perform “Transducer Leakage Current Test (Source)” on page 296.
- Perform “Transducer Isolation Leakage Current Test (Sink)” on page 303.

If the transducer passes the source and sink leakage tests, and the sink current is less than the 600-µA limit applied to Type BF transducers, the transducer is safe for use. However, the transducer should be tested using the source and sink procedures in this manual to monitor the transducer for leakage increases between uses.

If the transducer fails the source or sink leakage tests, contact your authorized Philips representative.

Transducer Leakage Current Test (Source)

The Transducer Leakage Current Test (Source) checks a transducer for electrical leakage while it is connected to the ultrasound system. The system sends normal operating voltages to the transducer, and leakage is measured using a safety analyzer. The figures in this procedure show the basic electrical conditions for each phase of the test.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

This test can be hazardous. Avoid any contact with line voltage. Do not touch the conductive part of the system enclosure or the lead at any time during the test when the ground connection is open.

WARNING

Only a technically qualified person should perform this procedure.

CAUTION

To avoid damaging the transducer, do not immerse the connector.

CAUTION

To avoid corroding the control handle of a TEE transducer, do not immerse the handle or allow saline solution to contact the control handle.

CAUTION

On TEE transducers, do not crimp the flexible shaft or cable. Do not bend the shaft into a circle with a diameter of less than 0.3 m (1 ft).

CAUTION

Depths are not the same between transducer manufacturers. If you are working with approved non-Philips transducers, to avoid damaging the transducer, verify the immersion depth before immersion.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

CAUTION

Changing from normal to reverse polarity during a test procedure may damage the ultrasound system. Some ultrasound systems contain computers and hard drives. Rapidly cycling system power by using the polarity switch may damage these components. To prevent damage, power up the system with the safety analyzer set to normal polarity, take the measurement, and power down the system. Change the polarity on the safety analyzer, power up the system, and take the reverse polarity measurement. Do not turn the system power off during startup. Consider this caution whenever you change the polarity.

NOTE

Stand-alone test devices can perform indication-of-leakage tests *only*. The devices cannot diagnose the problem or provide a mitigation. Any stand-alone test failure indicates the need for complete safety testing of the transducer with the ultrasound system. For assistance, contact the authorized Philips representative.

NOTE

For Type BF transducers (for example, TEE transducers), perform the electrical safety tests *only* if you notice damage during your visual inspection.

NOTE

For Type CF transducers, perform the electrical safety tests regularly.

For descriptions of the symbols used in the figures in this procedure, see “Transducer Testing Background” on page 293.

1. Gather the equipment needed to perform the electrical safety test procedure (see “Transducer Testing Equipment” on page 292).

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

2. Set the safety analyzer mode to test all leads.
3. Fill a nonconductive test container with enough saline solution to completely cover the appropriate parts of the transducer (described in step 9).
4. Connect the test lead to the appropriate jack on the safety analyzer.
5. Rest the probe end of the test lead on the edge of the nonconductive test container to partially immerse the two metal prongs in the saline solution.
6. Plug the safety analyzer into an available wall outlet. Plug the ultrasound system power plug into the test receptacle on the safety analyzer.
7. Turn on the ultrasound system.
8. Connect the transducer to be tested to the system.
9. Read the safety messages preceding this procedure, refer to the information in "Transducer IPX Ratings" on page 295, and then carefully immerse the transducer as follows:
   - For transthoracic and endocavity transducers, immerse the handle including the head and up to 5 cm (2 in) from the cable strain relief.
   - For TEE and laparoscopic transducers, immerse the part of the flexible shaft that enters the body of the patient, up to the end of the immersion depth markers.
10. Set the safety analyzer to read leakage current in microamperes (µA).
11. Make sure that the transducer is selected and that the image is not frozen.
12. Obtain an image with the transducer.

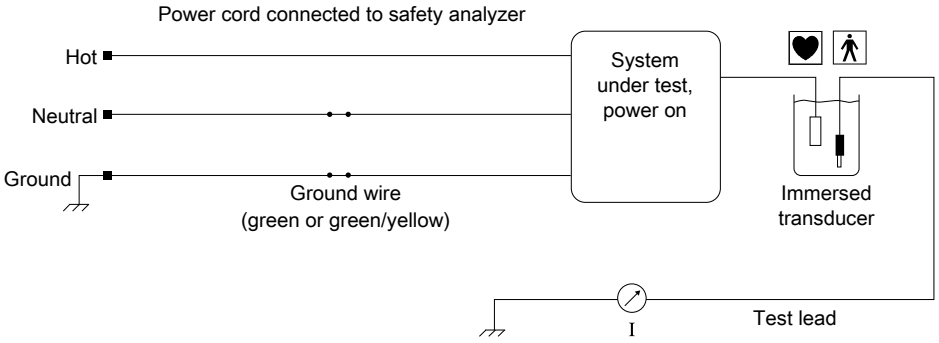
NOTE

For normal condition and single-fault condition 1 (open ground) measurements, the transducer must be imaging to measure the maximum leakage current.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

13. Read the current in normal polarity. Check that the value is within the limit specified for the normal condition in the table following this procedure. (Match the transducer type symbol on the transducer connector or cable with the symbol in the following figure.) Record the result.

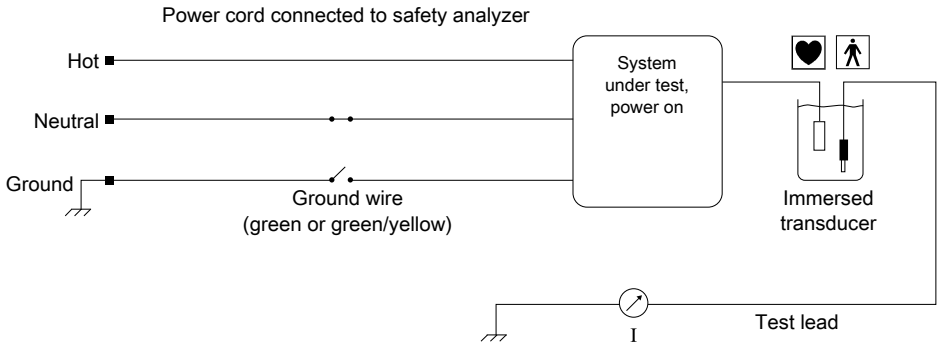


Transducer Leakage Current Test (Source): Normal Condition

14. Reverse the polarity on the safety analyzer, and then make sure that the transducer is selected and that the image is not frozen. Read the current in reverse polarity. Check that the value is within the limit specified for the normal condition in the table following this procedure. Record the result.
15. Read the current with single-fault condition 1 (see the following figure) imposed in normal polarity. Record the result.

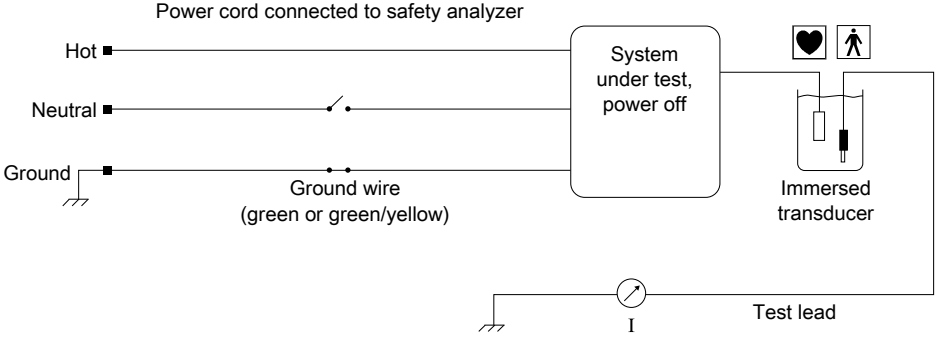
4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips



Transducer Leakage Current Test (Source): Single-Fault Condition 1

16. Reverse the polarity on the safety analyzer, and then read the current with single-fault condition 1 (see the preceding figure). Compare this result to the result obtained in step 15. The higher of the two results is the recorded value for single-fault condition 1.
17. Check that the current values measured in step 15 and step 16 are within the limit specified for single-fault condition 1 in the table following the procedure.
18. Turn off the ultrasound system, and then read the current with single-fault condition 2 (see the following figure) imposed in normal polarity. Record the result.



Transducer Leakage Current Test (Source): Single-Fault Condition 2

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

19. With the ultrasound system still off, read the current with single-fault condition 2 (see the preceding figure) imposed for reverse polarity. Record the result, and compare it to the result obtained in step 18. The higher of the two results is the recorded value for single-fault condition 2.
20. Check that the current values measured in step 18 and step 19 are within the limit specified for the single-fault condition 2 in the table following the procedure.

CAUTION

Values exceeding the limits may indicate a fault in the transducer housing or the cable cover. Contact the authorized Philips representative for assistance. Do not continue with other tests or use the system, until the problem is corrected.

Transducer Leakage Current Test (Source) Results

Condition	AC Polarity	IEC Limits (Maximum Values)	Recorded Value
Normal	Normal	Type CF: ≤ 10 µA Type BF: ≤ 100 µA	Higher between normal and reverse polarity
	Reverse		
Single-fault condition 1	Normal	Type CF: ≤ 50 µA Type BF: ≤ 500 µA	Higher between normal and reverse polarity
	Reverse		
Single-fault condition 2	Normal	Type CF: ≤ 50 µA Type BF: ≤ 500 µA	Higher between normal and reverse polarity
	Reverse		

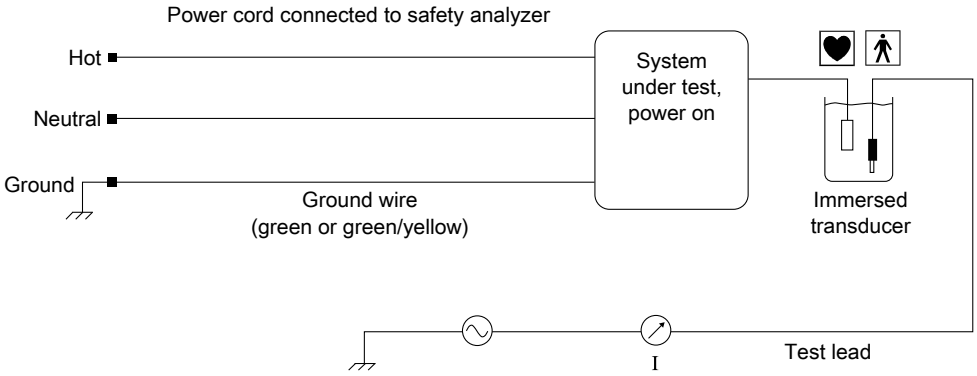
4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Transducer Isolation Leakage Current Test (Sink)

The following figure shows the basic electrical concept of the Transducer Isolation Leakage Current Test (Sink). The transducer is immersed in a nonconductive test container of saline solution. AC voltage from an AC power source is introduced into the saline solution, and leakage current in the transducer is measured using a safety analyzer.

For descriptions of the symbols used in the figure in this procedure, see “Transducer Testing Background” on page 293.



Transducer Isolation Leakage Current Test (Sink)

WARNING

This test is hazardous. It applies line voltage through the test leads to the housing of the transducer. Avoid accidental contact with the line voltage. Do not touch the chassis, the test leads, or the transducer cables while performing the test. Keep the test leads and transducer cables at least 20 cm (8 in) from any grounded or conductive surfaces.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

WARNING

Only a technically qualified person should perform this procedure.

CAUTION

To avoid damaging the transducer, do not immerse the connector.

CAUTION

To avoid corroding the control handle of a TEE transducer, do not immerse the handle or allow saline solution to contact the control handle.

CAUTION

On TEE transducers, do not crimp the flexible shaft or cable. Do not bend the shaft into a circle with a diameter of less than 0.3 m (1 ft).

CAUTION

Depths are not the same between transducer manufacturers. If you are working with approved non-Philips transducers, to avoid damaging the transducer verify the immersion depth before immersion.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

CAUTION

Changing from normal to reverse polarity during a test procedure may damage the ultrasound system. Some ultrasound systems contain computers and hard drives. Rapidly cycling system power by using the polarity switch may damage these components. To prevent damage, power up the system with the safety analyzer set to normal polarity, take the measurement, and power down the system. Change the polarity on the safety analyzer, power up the system, and take the reverse polarity measurement. Do not turn the system power off during startup. Consider this caution whenever you change the polarity.

NOTE

Stand-alone test devices can perform indication-of-leakage tests *only*. The devices cannot diagnose the problem or provide a mitigation. Any stand-alone test failure indicates the need for complete safety testing of the transducer with the ultrasound system. For assistance, contact the authorized Philips representative.

NOTE

For Type BF transducers, perform the electrical safety tests *only* if you notice damage during your visual inspection.

NOTE

For Type CF transducers, perform the electrical safety tests regularly.

NOTE

During the isolation test, *do not* impose open ground or open neutral conditions.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

1. Gather the equipment needed to perform the electrical safety test procedure (see “Transducer Testing Equipment” on page 292).
2. Set the safety analyzer mode to test all leads.
3. Fill a nonconductive test container with enough saline solution to completely cover the appropriate parts of the transducer (see step 9).
4. Connect a test lead to the appropriate jack on the safety analyzer.
5. Insert the exposed end of the test lead into the saline solution.
6. Plug the safety analyzer into an available wall outlet. Plug the ultrasound system power plug into the test receptacle on the safety analyzer.
7. Turn on the ultrasound system.
8. Connect the transducer to the system.
9. Read the safety messages preceding this procedure, refer to the information in “Transducer IPX Ratings” on page 295, and then carefully insert the transducer as follows:
   - For transthoracic and endocavity transducers, immerse the handle including the head and up to 5 cm (2 in) from the cable strain relief.
   - For TEE and laparoscopic transducers, immerse the part of the flexible shaft that enters the body of the patient, up to the end of the immersion depth markers.
10. Set the safety analyzer to read leakage current in microamperes (µA).
11. Measure the isolation leakage current of the transducer. Record the value, and check that it is within the limit specified in the table following the procedure.
12. Repeat step 11 for reverse polarity. Record the value, and check that it is within the limit specified in the table following the procedure.

CAUTION

Values exceeding the limits may indicate a fault in the transducer housing or the cable cover. Contact the authorized Philips representative for assistance. Do not continue with other tests or use the system, until the problem is corrected.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Transducer Isolation Leakage Current Test (Sink) Results

Condition	AC Polarity	Limits (Maximum Values)	Recorded Value
Normal	Normal	Type CF: ≤ 50 µA	Higher between normal and reverse polarity
	Reverse	Type BF: ≤ 600 µA [1]	

1. While the IEC standard maximum limit is 5,000 µA, Philips suggests testing with a more conservative limit for business reasons.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021
Philips

9 Intraoperative Transducers

An intraoperative transducer is used during surgery to help the surgeon locate and visualize anatomical structures, to visualize blood flow patterns and quantify velocities, and to image and measure anatomical and physiological parameters of interest to the surgeon.

For information on connecting transducers, see “Connecting Transducers” on page 223. For more information on caring for and maintaining transducers, see *Care and Cleaning of Ultrasound Systems and Transducers* and *Disinfectants and Cleaning Solutions for Ultrasound Systems and Transducers*.

WARNING

Always remove the transducer from the patient before defibrillation.

WARNING

Before defibrillation, if you cannot remove the transducer from the patient, always disconnect invasive transducers that remain in contact with the patient from the system.

Operators of Intraoperative Transducers

Philips intraoperative transducers are designed to be used under the guidance of physicians who are properly trained in intraoperative ultrasound imaging techniques according to currently approved relevant medical practices. Philips recommends that physicians operating any Philips intraoperative transducer have the following qualifications:

- Proficiency in recognizing and interpreting imaging patterns
- Thorough familiarity with the safe operation, care, and maintenance of the ultrasound system and the intraoperative transducers
- Thorough familiarity with the latest intraoperative methods through literature and seminars

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Intended Uses for Intraoperative Transducers

Intraoperative studies are performed by surgeons, anesthesiologists, or sonographers to obtain images that can be used for the following purposes:

- Helping a surgeon locate and visualize anatomical structures before, during, or after a surgical procedure
- Helping a surgeon visualize blood flow patterns and quantify velocities before, during, or after a surgical procedure
- Imaging and measuring anatomic and physiologic parameters before, during, or after a surgical procedure

WARNING

Intraoperative transducers used in animal studies should not be used on humans. Intraoperative transducers used in human studies should not be used on animals. Transducer disinfection procedures for cross-usage between animals and humans have not been validated.

WARNING

Type BF ( ) intraoperative transducers are not intended to come into contact with the central nervous system or central cardiovascular system.

Patient Safety During Intraoperative Studies

To operate an intraoperative transducer, you must be under the guidance of a physician who is properly trained in intraoperative ultrasound imaging techniques, according to currently approved relevant medical practices. You also must be thoroughly familiar with the safe operation, care, and maintenance of the ultrasound system used with the transducer, as well as proficient at interpreting the images generated.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

To help ensure patient safety when using an intraoperative transducer, observe the following guidelines:

- Scrutinize the entire transducer before each use. (See *Care and Cleaning of Ultrasound Systems and Transducers*.)
- Use mandatory protective equipment, including a legally marketed sterile protective transducer cover, during intraoperative studies. For information about using transducer covers, see “Preparing Transducers for Intraoperative Use” on page 315.
- Operate the transducer properly.
- Do not allow water or other liquids to drip onto the transducer connector, the interior of the system, or the control panel.
- Maintain a sterile field.
- Ensure that no part of the transducer contacts the patient's skin or tissue for a prolonged length of time.
- Use procedures or an appropriate device to avoid or minimize pressure between the patient and the transducer external components.
- Always monitor any pressure points where the transducer components contact the patient.

For electrical safety test procedures, see “Transducer Electrical Safety Testing” on page 289.

WARNING

All intraoperative studies intended for direct contact with the patient's heart must be performed with a Type CF classified transducer. If your transducer is not labeled Type CF on the transducer connector, contact your Philips service representative.

WARNING

In intraoperative applications, use a legally marketed sterile transducer cover and Sterile Aquasonic, sterile Ultra Phonic gel, or other sterile gels provided with the transducer cover.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

Always remove the transducer from the patient before defibrillation.

WARNING

Before defibrillation, if you cannot remove the transducer from the patient, always disconnect invasive transducers that remain in contact with the patient from the system.

Patient-Contact Parts

WARNING

Latex and talc are commonly used in sheaths marketed to help with infection control in transesophageal, endocavity, and intraoperative imaging applications, and during needle guidance and biopsy procedures. Examine the packaging to confirm latex and talc content. Studies have shown that patients can experience allergic reactions with natural rubber latex. See the FDA Medical Alert, March 29, 1991, reprinted in "FDA Medical Alert on Latex" on page 68.

NOTE

The ultrasound system and transducers discussed here do not contain natural rubber latex that contacts humans. Natural rubber latex is not used on any Philips ultrasound transducers.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Preventing Intraoperative Transducer Problems

WARNING

If you find any signs of damage to the transducer, patient safety may be compromised. Do not use the transducer, and contact your Philips service representative.

Meticulous inspection and correct and careful operation of intraoperative transducers are imperative to patient safety. The situations listed here affect safe operation as well as the ability to service mechanical problems under the Philips warranty or service contract. Transducer repairs necessitated by misuse are not covered and can be very costly, often requiring complete disassembly and rebuilding of the transducer.

There are three primary areas of transducer misuse:

- Cuts and abrasions on the transducer insulation and lens from sharp instruments such as scalpels, scissors, and clamps
- Improper disinfection techniques, causing fluid to enter the transducer or damage transducer materials
- Damage caused by dropping the transducer on a hard surface

To minimize the chance of damage, Philips strongly recommends that you clearly post stringent protocols for the care of intraoperative transducers, based on the information provided here.

Electrical Safety and Intraoperative Transducers

All Philips ultrasound systems and transducers comply with common medical device electrical safety standards.

Intraoperative transducers intended for direct contact with the patient's heart are classified as a Type CF isolated patient-applied part, as described in IEC 60601-1. There are no exposed conductive surfaces on the transducer head.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

For electrical safety information about intraoperative transducers, see “Leakage Current and Intraoperative Transducers” on page 314.

For safety information on electrosurgical units, pacemakers, defibrillators, and related topics, see “Electrical Safety” on page 35.

Leakage Current and Intraoperative Transducers

WARNING

Only a technically qualified person should perform leakage current test procedures.

WARNING

Leakage current tests should be performed if the transducer has been dropped or if cracks or cuts are found on the transducer.

NOTE

Stand-alone test devices can perform indication-of-leakage tests *only*. The devices cannot diagnose the problem or provide a mitigation. Any stand-alone test failure indicates the need for complete safety testing of the transducer with the ultrasound system. For assistance, contact the authorized Philips representative.

Philips transducers approved for intraoperative use are labeled on the transducer connector as Type BF () or Type CF () in accordance with IEC 60601-1. Type CF transducers provide the highest degree of protection against electric shock and are suitable for all patient applications, including direct cardiac and intraoperative applications. Type BF transducers are not suitable for direct cardiac applications.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Leakage hazards are further reduced when the ultrasound system is plugged into an isolated power outlet, which is standard in most operating rooms.

Regularly perform the leakage current tests found in “Transducer Electrical Safety Testing” on page 289. The frequency of testing should be based on the procedures established by the hospital for operating-room-based equipment.

Preparing Transducers for Intraoperative Use

1. Place 20 cc of sterile gel or saline into the transducer cover.
2. Carefully inspect each transducer cover before use, and discard it if you find tears or blemishes. Also inspect each transducer cover after use. If you find a tear, the patient or the transducer may have been contaminated.
3. Insert the transducer into the transducer cover and unfurl the transducer cover until it covers the transducer and its cable. The cover must be unfurled far enough to maintain the sterile field.
4. Use a sterile elastic band or clip to hold the proximal end of the transducer cover in place.
5. Ensure that wrinkles and bubbles over the face of the transducer are minimized. Check the transducer cover for tears or damage before proceeding.
6. When operating the transducer, make sure that proper orientation is maintained to avoid interpretation confusion.

NOTE

To achieve good acoustic contact, make sure that the imaging surface is moist.

NOTE

Imaging improves with adequate coupling between the patient surface and the transducer-cover surface. Sterile water is a good acoustic-coupling agent during surgery.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Disposable Drapes

During studies in which you believe contamination of the ultrasound system can occur, Philips recommends that you take universal precautions and cover the system with a disposable drape. Consult your hospital's rules regarding equipment use in the presence of infectious disease.

Accessories for Intraoperative Transducers

For information on ordering accessories, see "Supplies and Accessories" on page 26.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

10 Transesophageal Transducers

A transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) study is performed with a transducer mounted in a flexible shaft, which is positioned in the esophagus or stomach. TEE transducers offer images that are unobstructed by lungs and ribs, making them important diagnostic tools for conditions that transthoracic echocardiography cannot adequately image.

All transesophageal transducers are rated minimum IPX1 (control area) and IPX7 (endoscope area) in accordance with IEC 60529.

The system supports the S7-3t, S8-3t, X7-2t, and X8-2t TEE transducers. The imaging array in the transducers can be rotated electronically using controls on the transducer. The imaging array in the X7-2t and X8-2t transducers can also be rotated electronically using controls on the control panel.

For information on connecting transducers, see “Connecting Transducers” on page 223. For more information on caring for and maintaining transducers, see *Care and Cleaning of Ultrasound Systems and Transducers* and *Disinfectants and Cleaning Solutions for Ultrasound Systems and Transducers*.

WARNING

Always remove the transducer from the patient before defibrillation.

WARNING

Before defibrillation, if you cannot remove the transducer from the patient, always disconnect invasive transducers that remain in contact with the patient from the ultrasound system.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Disinfect new transducers before performing the first study. Clean and disinfect the transducer immediately after each use to protect patients and personnel from pathogens. Establish and clearly post a cleaning procedure that includes the steps described in *Care and Cleaning of Ultrasound Systems and Transducers*.

Operators of TEE Transducers

Philips TEE transducers are designed for use under the guidance of physicians who are properly trained in esophagogastroscopy techniques, according to currently approved relevant medical practices. Philips recommends that physicians operating any Philips TEE transducer have the following qualifications:

- Proficiency in recognizing and interpreting transesophageal imaging patterns
- Thorough familiarity with the safe operation, care, and maintenance of the ultrasound system and TEE transducers
- Thorough familiarity with the latest TEE methods through literature and seminars

Patient Safety During TEE Studies

Philips recommends that you practice using the TEE transducer controls before performing any procedure mentioned here. You must also be thoroughly familiar with the safe operation, care, and maintenance of the ultrasound imaging system used with the TEE transducer, as well as proficient at interpreting the images generated.

You can help ensure patient safety when using a TEE transducer by following these guidelines:

- Have a backup system present during TEE exams to ensure completion of the exam in the event that the primary system fails.
- Use informed judgment when selecting patients for TEE studies. See “Patient Selection for TEE Transducer Use” on page 359.
- Insert, remove, and operate the transducer properly.
- Ensure that the transducer handle does not rest on or touch the patient.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- Use protective equipment, such as a bite guard and a legally marketed sterile transducer cover during a TEE study. See “TEE Accessories and Supplies” on page 370.
- Minimize the possibility of transducer tip fold-over. This problem has occurred rarely, but its consequences can be serious. See “Tip Fold-Over” on page 362.
- Ensure that no part of the transducer, including external components (shaft, handle, cable), contacts the patient's skin or tissue for a prolonged length of time.
- Use procedures or an appropriate device, such as a TEE transducer holder, to avoid or minimize pressure between the patient and the transducer external components (shaft, handle, cable).
- Always monitor any pressure points where the transducer components contact the patient.
- Verbally prepare each patient for the procedure before the study. See “Preparing Patients for TEE Studies” on page 360.
- Scrutinize the entire transducer, turn on the system, and test all of the transducer controls and related system controls, before inserting the TEE transducer into the patient's esophagus. See “Checking the TEE Transducer” on page 358.
- Do not allow water or other liquids to come in contact with the interior of the system, the interior of the transducer connector, or the inside of the transducer control handle.

To prevent tissue damage such as pressure necrosis, gastroesophageal lacerations, bleeding, tearing of adhesions, ligament damage, and perforation, observe the following warnings and cautions.

WARNING

Never apply excessive force when inserting or withdrawing a TEE transducer, or when operating the transducer deflection controls.

WARNING

Do not allow the transducer to remain at a maximum deflection for long periods of time.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

Whenever the TEE transducer is not being used during a procedure, ensure that it is in freewheeling mode and unplugged from the system.

WARNING

Set the brake on to restrict the medial/lateral movement of the TEE transducer during insertion.

WARNING

To prevent tissue damage, Philips recommends that the tip of the TEE transducer be straightened and both detent brakes released before you reposition the transducer or withdraw the transducer from the patient. In the neutral position, the tip is straight when the indicators on the control wheels are aligned and point toward the center of the array rotation button.

WARNING

Bite guards are mandatory; protective transducer covers are recommended for TEE transducers, but in China and Japan, the covers are mandatory. See "Electrical Safety and TEE Transducers" on page 326.

CAUTION

To avoid damaging flexible shaft cables, be sure that the distal tip of the transducer is in the neutral (straight) position when inserting a transducer into, or removing it from, the transducer cover.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

The TEE transducers are classified as Type BF isolated patient-applied parts, as described in IEC 60601-1. There are no exposed conductive surfaces distal to the transducer handle. To ensure safe operation of this transducer, read the cautions and warnings in the "Safety" section, especially those that address electrosurgical units, pacemakers, and defibrillators.

The following table summarizes patient safety problems, describes how to prevent them, and lists the sections in this manual where details are provided.

WARNING

If you encounter an irregularity not listed in the following table, do not use the transducer. Potentially serious consequences could result. Contact your Philips representative.

Ensuring Patient Safety During TEE Studies

Problem	Effect on Patient	Prevention	See
Mechanical damage	Severe trauma, cuts, bleeding, perforations	Inspect the transducer, using both sight and touch, before the study.	"Checking the TEE Transducer" on page 358
Electrical damage	Esophageal burns	Check the transducer for frayed insulation, kinks, or other abnormalities. Follow procedures for checking electrical safety.	"Electrical Safety and TEE Transducers" on page 326
Biting, scraping transducer	Tooth damage, esophageal burns	Always use a bite guard.	"Bite Guards" on page 370
Insufficient cleaning protocol	Spread of illness or disease	Thoroughly clean and disinfect the transducer after each use. Cover the tip and shaft with a transducer cover. Cover the imaging system with a disposable drape if highly pathogenic organisms are known or suspected.	*Care and Cleaning of Ultrasound Systems and Transducers*, and *Disinfectants and Cleaning Solutions for Ultrasound Systems and Transducers*

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Problem	Effect on Patient	Prevention	See
Improper insertion or withdrawal	Esophageal cuts, bleeding, ligament damage, perforations	To prevent improper insertion or withdrawal when using a TEE transducer, never use force when inserting, removing, or manipulating the transducer. During insertion, set the brake to restrict the medial/lateral controls. During withdrawal, release both brakes to place both steering knobs in the freewheeling position.	“TEE Study Guidelines” on page 361
Pressure necrosis	Death of esophageal lining tissue	Keep deflection controls in freewheeling mode and unplug the transducer from the system when not imaging. Minimize the pressure applied to deflection area and distal tip. Do not let the distal tip displace a tissue area for more than 5 consecutive minutes.	“TEE Study Guidelines” on page 361
Prolonged pressure between patient and device	Device-related pressure ulcers or injuries	As appropriate, minimize prolonged pressure by any part of the transducer, including the external components, and the patient's skin or tissue. Frequently monitor any potential pressure points between the TEE transducer and the patient's skin or tissue.	“TEE Study Guidelines” on page 361
Increased transducer temperature	Esophageal burns	Use the TEE preset that has been established to minimize the effects of temperature. For febrile patients, use the Auto-Cool feature.	“Entering Patient Temperature” on page 368
Improper patient position	Transient unilateral vocal cord paralysis	Never use the transducer during any procedure requiring extreme neck flexion, such as sitting craniotomies.	“TEE Study Guidelines” on page 361

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Problem	Effect on Patient	Prevention	See
Nonisolated ESUs	Electrical burns	Only use isolated-output electrosurgical units (ESUs). The ESU label or service guide or your biomedical department should identify whether or not the ESU is isolated. Unplug transducer from the system when you are not imaging.	"Electrical Safety and TEE Transducers" on page 326
Defibrillation issues	Electrical burns	Remove the transducer from the patient before defibrillation.	"Electrical Safety and TEE Transducers" on page 326

For electrical safety test procedures, see "Transducer Electrical Safety Testing" on page 289.

Patient-Contact Parts

WARNING

Latex and talc are commonly used in sheaths marketed to help with infection control in transesophageal, endocavity, and intraoperative imaging applications, and during needle guidance and biopsy procedures. Examine the packaging to confirm latex and talc content. Studies have shown that patients can experience allergic reactions with natural rubber latex. See the FDA Medical Alert, March 29, 1991, reprinted in "FDA Medical Alert on Latex" on page 68.

NOTE

The ultrasound system and transducers discussed here do not contain natural rubber latex that contacts humans. Natural rubber latex is not used on any Philips ultrasound transducers.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Preventing TEE Transducer Problems

WARNING

If you find any signs of damage to the transducer, patient safety may be compromised. Do not use the transducer, and contact your Philips representative.

Meticulous inspection and correct and careful operation of the TEE (transesophageal) transducer is imperative to patient safety. The situations listed here affect safe operation as well as the ability to service mechanical problems under the Philips one-year warranty or service contract. Transducer repairs necessitated by misuse of the transducer are not covered and can be very costly, often requiring complete disassembly and rebuilding of the transducer.

There are three primary areas of transducer misuse:

- Cuts and abrasions on the transducer and insulation from teeth or sharp instruments such as scalpels, scissors, and clamps
- Improper disinfection techniques, including allowing fluid to enter the connector or transducer handle and the use of unapproved disinfectants
- Consistently applying too much force to the control wheels of a TEE transducer, which can break the steering mechanism

Review the following table to familiarize yourself with specific problems, to learn how to avoid them, and to identify the sections in this manual where details are provided. Philips also strongly recommends that you clearly post stringent protocols for TEE transducer care, based on the information in this manual, to minimize the chance of damage.

WARNING

For any other irregularity not listed in the following table, do not use the transducer. Potentially serious consequences could result. Contact your Philips representative.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Preventing TEE Transducer Equipment Problems

Problem	Effect on Equipment	Prevention	Reference
Current leakage	Serious electrical hazards	Check the transducer for cuts, frayed insulation, kinks, or other abnormalities.	"Checking the TEE Transducer" on page 358
Biting transducer	Mechanical and electrical hazards	Cover the patient's teeth with a bite guard (mandatory). Cover the distal tip and flexible shaft with a transducer cover (recommended, but in China and Japan, mandatory).	"Bite Guards" on page 370
Forcing deflection controls	Steering mechanism broken	Operate the deflection controls gently.	"TEE Deflection Control Basics" on page 328, "S7-3t TEE Controls" on page 333, "S8-3t Controls" on page 341, "X7-2t Deflection Controls" on page 349, and "X8-2t Deflection Controls" on page 354
Incorrect storage	Possible damage to highly sensitive elements, cuts in flexible shaft	Suspend the transducer from a wall-mounted rack and the distal tip with a tip protector when not in use.	"Transducer Storage" on page 287
Internal exposure to liquids	Severe transducer damage that affects the image quality, the steering mechanism, and electrical safety	Never sterilize the transducer by using steam, heat, or ethylene oxide (EtO). Never immerse the steering mechanism in any disinfectant or liquid.	*Care and Cleaning of Ultrasound Systems and Transducers* and *Disinfectants and Cleaning Solutions for Ultrasound Systems and Transducers*

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Electrical Safety and TEE Transducers

All Philips ultrasound systems and transducers comply with common medical device electrical safety standards.

For the TEE transducers discussed in this document, the insertion tube and tip are

Type BF (), as described in IEC 60601-1. There are no exposed conductive surfaces distal to the transducer handle. Within the flexible shaft, all active circuits and conductors are surrounded by a chassis-grounded shield that runs the length of the transducer.

For electrical safety information about TEE transducers, see “Leakage Current and TEE Transducers” on page 326 and “Reducing Risks of Using TEE Transducers” on page 327.

For safety information on electrosurgical units, pacemakers, defibrillators, and related topics, see “Electrical Safety” on page 35.

Leakage Current and TEE Transducers

WARNING

Only a technically qualified person should perform leakage current test procedures.

WARNING

Leakage current tests should be performed if the transducer has been dropped or if cracks or cuts are found on the transducer.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

Stand-alone test devices can perform indication-of-leakage tests *only*. The devices cannot diagnose the problem or provide a mitigation. Any stand-alone test failure indicates the need for complete safety testing of the transducer with the ultrasound system. For assistance, contact the authorized Philips representative.

If the outer layer of the TEE transducer shaft is punctured or cracked, a patient's esophagus could be exposed to chassis leakage current. This leakage current is not hazardous provided that the ground connector (third wire) in the ultrasound system power cable is intact and connected to a properly grounded wall outlet. Even if the ground connector breaks, leakage current is in compliance with the limits noted in IEC 60601-1.

Leakage hazards are further reduced when the ultrasound system is plugged into an isolated power outlet, which is standard in most operating rooms.

Regularly perform the leakage current tests found in "Transducer Electrical Safety Testing" on page 289. The frequency of testing should be based on the procedures established by the hospital for operating-room-based equipment.

Reducing Risks of Using TEE Transducers

WARNING

Always remove the transducer from the patient before defibrillation.

WARNING

Before defibrillation, if you cannot remove the transducer from the patient, always disconnect invasive transducers that remain in contact with the patient from the ultrasound system.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

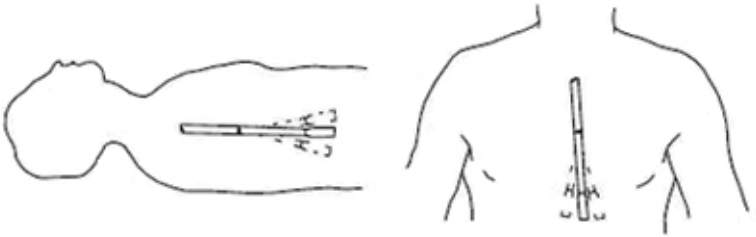
Philips

To reduce the possibility of electrical risks associated with use of TEE transducers, follow these recommendations:

- Visually and tactually inspect a TEE transducer for bumps, cracks, and cuts before each TEE exam. A small bump on the shaft surface could indicate that a strand from the ground shield has broken and is beginning to puncture the outer layer. If you suspect a problem with the flexible shaft, perform the electrical safety check procedure. See “Transducer Electrical Safety Testing” on page 289.
- Use electrosurgical units (ESUs) that have isolated outputs. Return fault/ground fault detection circuits provide additional protection. To determine if an ESU has an isolated output, read the label on the ESU, see the ESU service guide, or ask a biomedical engineer.
- Require periodic electrical safety checks to ensure that the grounding system in your area remains intact.
- If the transducer is left in a patient during periods when imaging is not taking place, unplug the transducer from the system to reduce the possibility of leakage current or ESU interaction. Also make sure that the deflection control brakes are off and that the transducer is in freewheeling mode.

TEE Deflection Control Basics

The deflection controls on the TEE transducer move the deflection area, located between the distal tip and flexible shaft. The deflection area bends when you operate the controls, permitting anterior, posterior, and lateral positioning.



Deflection Control Movement

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

To prevent tissue damage such as pressure necrosis, gastroesophageal lacerations, bleeding, tearing of adhesions, ligament damage, and perforation, observe the following warnings. See “TEE Transducer References” on page 371.

WARNING

Never apply excessive force when inserting or withdrawing a TEE transducer, or when operating the transducer deflection controls.

WARNING

Set the brake on to restrict the medial/lateral movement of the TEE transducer during insertion.

WARNING

To prevent tissue damage, Philips recommends that the tip of the TEE transducer be straightened and both detent brakes released before you reposition the transducer or withdraw the transducer from the patient. In the neutral position, the tip is straight when the indicators on the control wheels are aligned and point toward the center of the array rotation button.

WARNING

Whenever the TEE transducer is not being used during a procedure, ensure that it is in freewheeling mode and unplugged from the system.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

Do not allow the TEE transducer to remain at a maximum deflection for long periods of time.

WARNING

Bite guards are mandatory; protective covers are recommended for TEE transducers, except in China and Japan, where protective transducer covers are mandatory for TEE transducers.

WARNING

To avoid damaging flexible shaft cables, be sure that the distal tip of the transducer is in the neutral (straight) position when inserting a transducer into, or removing it from, the transducer cover.

Using the S7-3t TEE Transducer

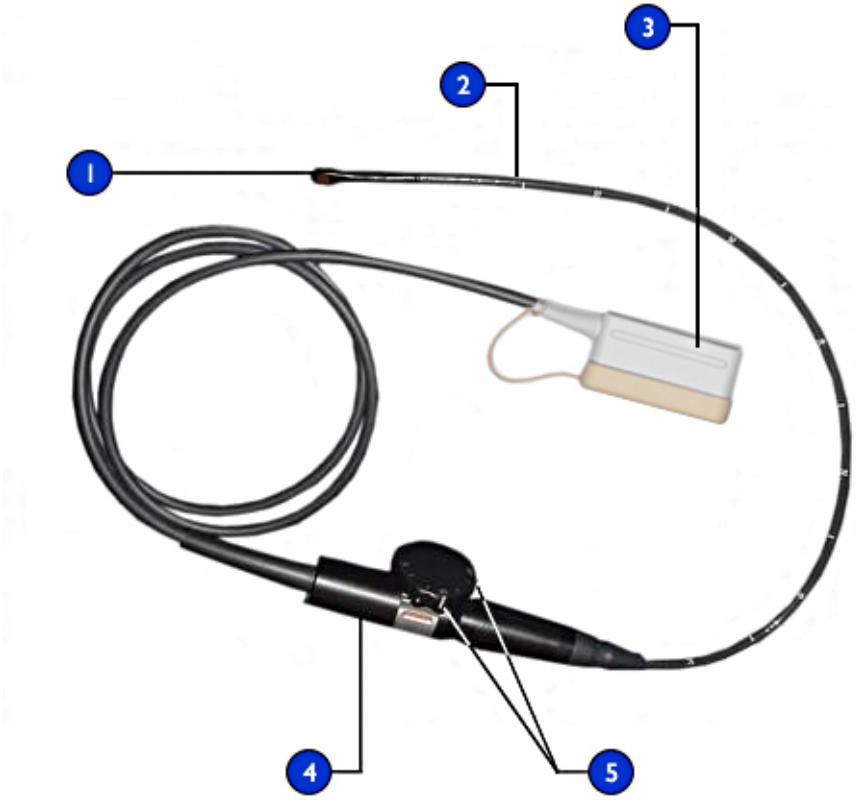
Philips recommends familiarizing yourself with the controls and parts of the TEE transducer before using it in an exam. For more information on transducer controls, see “S7-3t TEE Controls” on page 333.

WARNING

Use the S7-3t transducer only on patients weighing at least 3.5 kg (7.7 lb).

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips



S7-3t TEE Transducer Parts

1	Distal tip
2	Flexible shaft
3	Transducer connector
4	Transducer handle
5	Deflection and array controls

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Handling the S7-3t Transducer

Because of its small size, the S7-3t transducer is a very delicate electronic instrument. To avoid damaging the transducer, observe the following cautions:

CAUTION

When wiping the distal tip of the transducer, never apply excessive force to the acoustic window. Gently wipe the tip with a moist cloth. Do not squeeze the window or tip, because this may damage the transducer.

CAUTION

Do not allow sharp objects, such as scissors, scalpels, or cauterizing knives, to touch transducers or cables.

CAUTION

Articulate the tip only with the controls; do not articulate it with your hand.

CAUTION

On TEE transducers, do not crimp the flexible shaft or cable. Do not bend the shaft into a circle with a diameter of less than 0.3 m (1 ft).

CAUTION

When handling a transducer, do not bump the transducer on hard surfaces.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

S7-3t TEE Controls

The transducer handle is designed for one-hand operation. Normally, you should operate the transducer handle with your left hand. The thumb, first, and second fingers control the deflection and the array rotation control wheels.

The smaller wheel on the transducer handle is for controlling the transducer tip deflection. This wheel has a brake on mode and a freewheeling mode. In the brake on mode, the movement of the deflection wheel is restrained to allow you to hold the tip in a certain position. A metallic ring around the body of the handle, which clicks on and off, controls the brake.

The larger wheel on top is for rotating the imaging array. The array can be rotated continuously from 0 degrees (transversal plane) through 90 degrees (longitudinal plane) to 180 degrees (transversal plane, left/right inverted).

WARNING

Verify that the maximum deflection of the tip is up 120 degrees (±10 degrees) and down 90 degrees (±10 degrees). If the up/down deflection shows an unwanted amount of free play or exceeds the maximal deflection angles, do not use the transducer. Contact Philips to readjust the steering of the transducer. Ensuring proper deflection limits minimizes the risk of the tip folding over in the esophagus.

WARNING

To protect the patient and the transducer, the tip of the S7-3t transducer must be straight and the deflection brake must be off when inserting or withdrawing the transducer. The tip is straight when the white line on the control wheel is aligned along the shaft of the transducer handle.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

Do not use the deflection brake on pediatric patients.

S7-3t Controls

1	90-degree rotation indicator
2	Array control
3	Deflection control
4	Deflection brake
5	Neutral position indicators (no deflection)

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

	Brake off, freewheeling (white)
	Brake on (red)

Manipulating the S7-3t TEE Tip

Review the warnings and caution in "Patient Safety During TEE Studies" on page 318 and "TEE Deflection Control Basics" on page 328 before using the transducer in a study.

WARNING

Do not use the deflection brake on pediatric patients.

CAUTION

On TEE transducers, do not crimp the flexible shaft or cable. Do not bend the shaft into a circle with a diameter of less than 0.3 m (1 ft).

1. Put the deflection control knob into freewheeling mode by sliding the deflection brake so that the indicator is white.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To deflect the tip toward the posterior, turn the smaller knob clockwise.
   - To deflect the tip toward the anterior, turn the smaller knob counterclockwise.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- To set the tip in the neutral position (no deflection), turn the smaller knob so that its white bar is in line with the center of the proximal end of the transducer handle.

3. After the tip is positioned properly, put the deflection control knob into brake-on mode by sliding the deflection brake so that the indicator is red.

Manipulating the S7-3t Transducer Tip

1	Deflection brake
2	Deflection control

S7-3t TEE Array Rotation

You can rotate the imaging array continuously from 0 degrees (transversal plane) through 90 degrees (longitudinal plane) to 180 degrees (transversal plane, left/right inverted). Because the transducer allows you to select all planes between 0 degrees and 180 degrees, you can scan a conical imaging volume.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

An icon shows the current degree of rotation. Depending on image orientation, the icon appears in the upper or lower part of the display.

S7-3t Array Rotation

	Short axis Angle = 0°
	Long axis Angle = 90°
	Short axis Angle = 180°

Rotating the S7-3t TEE Array

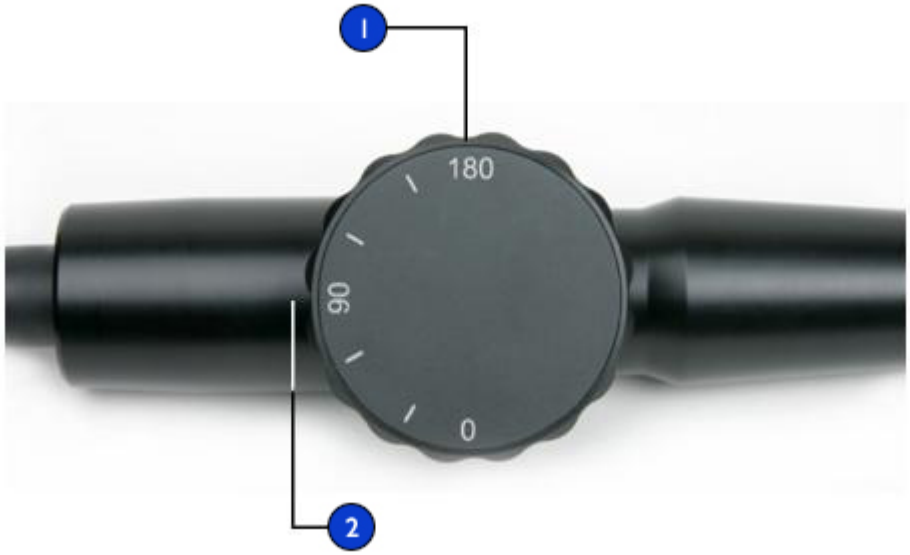
CAUTION

Do not use excessive force on the array rotation control wheel at its outer positions because this may damage the endoscope mechanism.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

1. To rotate the imaging array, turn the array control (the larger wheel).
2. To rotate the array to 90 degrees, align the white bar on the side of the array control with the center of the proximal end of the transducer handle.
3. To rotate the array to a specific setting, align a setting on the top of the array control with the center of the proximal end of the transducer handle.



Rotating the S7-3t Imaging Array

1	Array control
2	Align settings on the control with the proximal end of the transducer handle (90° setting as shown).

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

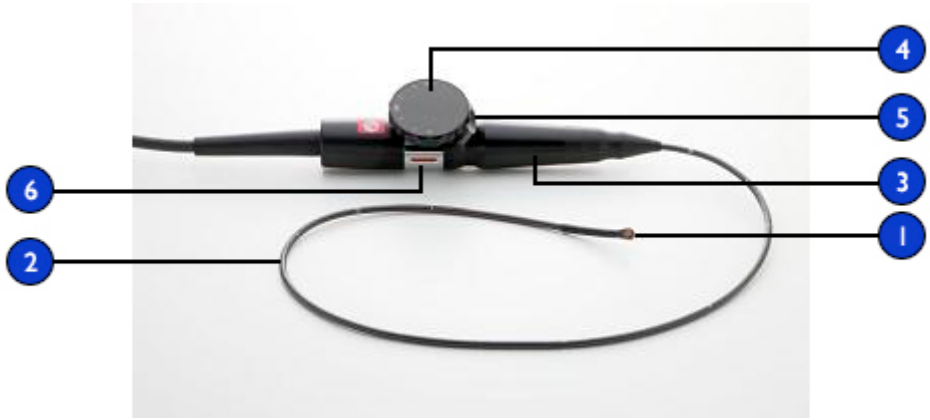
Philips

Using the S8-3t Transducer

Philips recommends familiarizing yourself with the controls and parts of the TEE transducer before using it in an exam. For more information on transducer controls, see “S8-3t Controls” on page 341.

WARNING

Use the S8-3t transducer only on patients weighing at least 2.5 kg (5.5 lb).



S8-3t TEE Transducer Parts

1	Distal tip
2	Flexible shaft
3	Transducer handle
4	Array control

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

5	Deflection control
6	Deflection brake

Patient Selection for the S8-3t TEE Transducer

Although the S8-3t TEE transducer can provide clinical data not available from other instruments, you should consider which patients can safely use the transducer.

WARNING

The ability of a patient to swallow or accommodate the transducer should be considered.

WARNING

You must consider any history of gastroesophageal diseases as well as the possible effects of other therapies that the patient is undergoing. You must also consider all gastroesophageal abnormalities or difficulty swallowing.

WARNING

Use the S8-3t transducer only on patients weighing at least 2.5 kg (5.5 lb).

Handling the S8-3t Transducer

Because of its small size, the S8-3t transducer is a very delicate electronic instrument. To avoid damaging the transducer, observe the following cautions:

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

CAUTION

When wiping the distal tip of the transducer, never apply excessive force to the acoustic window. Gently wipe the tip with a moist cloth. Do not squeeze the window or tip, because this may damage the transducer.

CAUTION

Do not allow sharp objects, such as scissors, scalpels, or cauterizing knives, to touch transducers or cables.

CAUTION

Articulate the tip only with the controls; do not articulate it with your hand.

CAUTION

On TEE transducers, do not crimp the flexible shaft or cable. Do not bend the shaft into a circle with a diameter of less than 0.3 m (1 ft).

CAUTION

When handling a transducer, do not bump the transducer on hard surfaces.

S8-3t Controls

The transducer handle is designed for one-hand operation. Typically, you should operate the transducer handle with your left hand. The thumb, first, and second fingers control the deflection and the array rotation control wheels.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

The lower wheel on the transducer handle is for controlling the transducer tip deflection. This wheel has a brake-on mode and a brake-off mode that allows it to freewheel. With the brake on, the movement of the deflection wheel is restrained to allow you to hold the tip in a certain position. A metallic ring around the body of the handle, which clicks on and off, controls the brake.

The larger wheel on top is for rotating the imaging array. The array can be rotated continuously from 0 degrees (transversal plane) through 90 degrees (longitudinal plane) to 180 degrees (transversal plane, left/right inverted).

WARNING

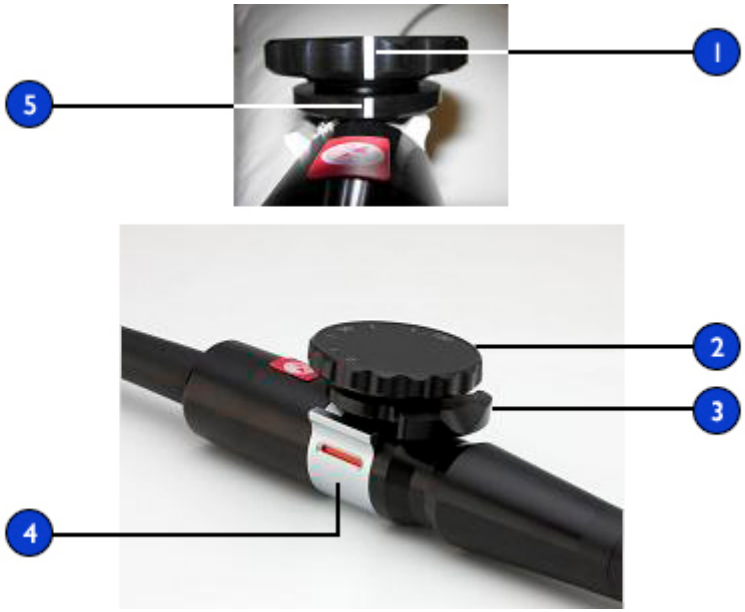
Do not use the deflection brake on pediatric patients.

WARNING

Verify that the maximum deflection of the tip is 120 degrees up and 90 degrees down. If the up/down deflection shows an unwanted amount of free play or exceeds the maximal deflection angles, do not use the transducer. Contact Philips to readjust the steering of the transducer. Ensuring proper deflection limits minimizes the risk of the tip folding over in the esophagus.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips



S8-3t Transducer Controls

1	90-degree rotation indicator
2	Array control
3	Deflection control
4	Deflection brake
5	Neutral position indicators (no deflection)

Manipulating the S8-3t Tip

Review the warnings and caution in “Patient Safety During TEE Studies” on page 318 and “TEE Deflection Control Basics” on page 328 before using the transducer in a study.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

WARNING

Do not use the deflection brake on pediatric patients.

WARNING

To protect the patient and the transducer, the tip of the S8-3t transducer must be straightened and the deflection brake must be off when inserting or withdrawing the transducer. The tip is straight when the deflection control is aligned along the distal end of the shaft of the transducer handle, and the white line on the articulation control is aligned with the center of the proximal end of the transducer handle.

CAUTION

On TEE transducers, do not crimp the flexible shaft or cable. Do not bend the shaft into a circle with a diameter of less than 0.3 m (1 ft).

CAUTION

Articulate the tip only with the controls; do not articulate it with your hand.

1. Put the deflection control knob into freewheeling mode by sliding the deflection brake so that the indicator is white.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To deflect the tip toward the posterior, turn the smaller knob clockwise.
   - To deflect the tip toward the anterior, turn the smaller knob counterclockwise.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- To set the tip in the neutral position (no deflection), turn the smaller knob so that the deflection control knob is aligned along the shaft and the white line is aligned with the center of the proximal end of the transducer handle.

S8-3t Array Rotation

You can rotate the imaging array continuously from 0 degrees (transversal plane) through 90 degrees (longitudinal plane) to 180 degrees (transversal plane, left/right inverted). Because the transducer allows you to select all planes between 0 degrees and 180 degrees, you can scan a conical imaging volume.

An icon shows the current degree of rotation. Depending on image orientation, the icon appears in the upper or lower part of the display.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

S8-3t Array Rotation

		Short axis Angle = 0°
		Long axis Angle = 90°
		Short axis Angle = 180°

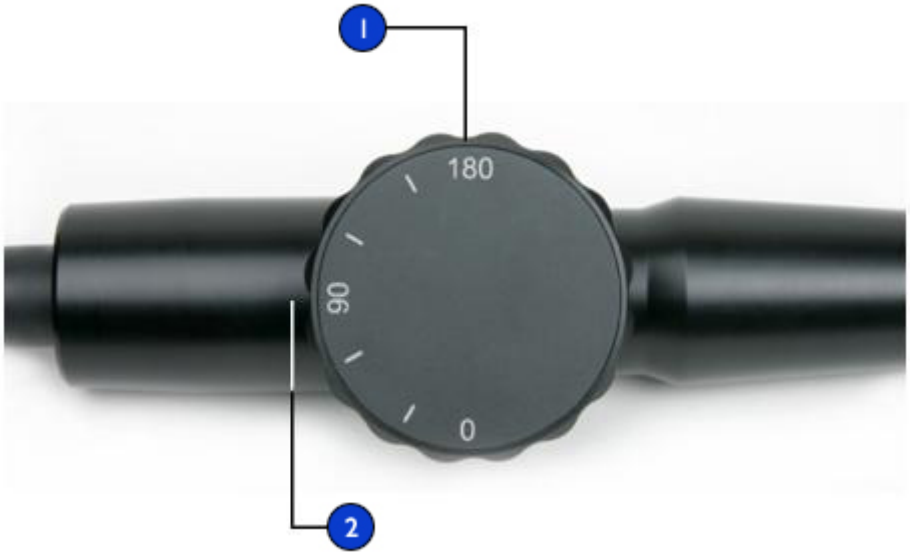
Rotating the S8-3t Array

CAUTION

Do not use excessive force on the array rotation control wheel at its outer positions, because this may damage the endoscope mechanism.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

1. To rotate the imaging array, turn the array control (the larger wheel).
2. To rotate the array to 90 degrees, align the white bar on the side of the array control with the center of the proximal end of the transducer handle.
3. To rotate the array to a specific setting, turn the array control knob until the display icon indicates the preferred angle.



Rotating the S8-3t Imaging Array

1	Array control
2	Align settings on the control with the proximal end of the transducer handle (90° setting shown)

Using the X7-2t TEE Transducer

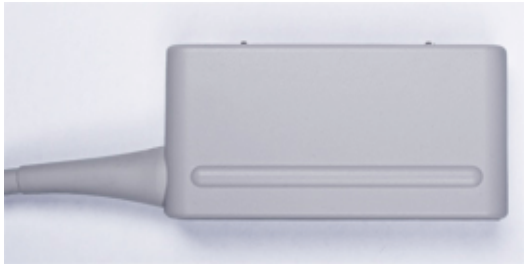
Philips recommends familiarizing yourself with the controls and parts of the TEE transducer before using it in a study.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

WARNING

Use the X7-2t transducer only on patients weighing at least 30 kg (66 lb), to ensure that the esophagus can comfortably accommodate the transducer.

TEE Transducer Components

Component	Description
	Distal tip
	Transducer connector

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Component	Description
	Transducer handle
	Deflection controls

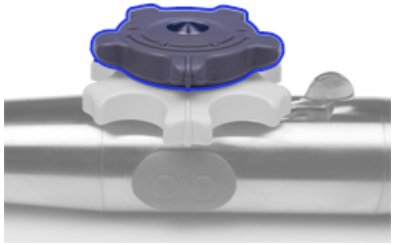
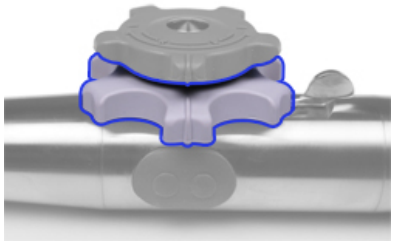
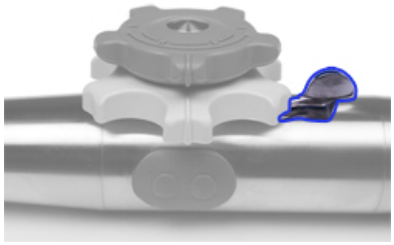
X7-2t Deflection Controls

The smaller knob controls medial/lateral movement, while the larger knob controls anterior/posterior movement. To place the tip of the TEE transducer into the neutral position, align the ribs on each knob with the center of the array rotation buttons (as shown in the following table).

The knobs can be controlled by a detent brake that holds the tip position without locking it in place. This allows the tip to straighten if it meets additional resistance. When the detent brake actuator is rotated to the right (as shown in the following table) both knobs are in the freewheeling mode. When the detent brake actuator is centered, the small knob (medial/lateral movement) is in the detent mode, and when the actuator is rotated to the left, both knobs are in the detent mode.

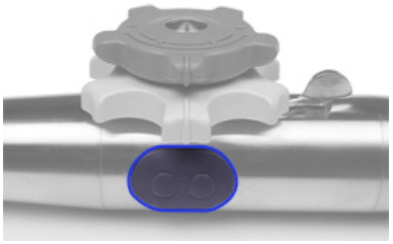
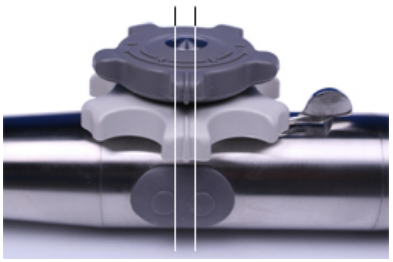
4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

X7-2t Transducer Controls

Control	Description
	Medial/lateral control
	Anterior/posterior control
	Detent brake actuator

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Control	Description
	Image plane rotation buttons
	Neutral position indicators, showing no deflection

Manipulating the X7-2t Tip

Review the warnings and caution in “Patient Safety During TEE Studies” on page 318 and “TEE Deflection Control Basics” on page 328 before using the transducer in a study.

1. Turn the detent brake actuator fully away from the image plane rotation buttons to put both knobs into freewheeling mode.
2. Turn the large knob to deflect the tip in the anterior/posterior plane.
3. Turn the small knob to deflect the tip in the medial/lateral plane.
4. When the tip is positioned properly, do one of the following:
   - Turn the detent brake actuator fully toward the image plane rotation buttons to put both knobs in detent mode.
   - Center the detent brake actuator to put only the small knob (medial/lateral movement) in the detent mode.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Rotating the X7-2t Image Plane

You can rotate the image plane on the X7-2t TEE transducer to achieve a 360-degree view of the heart. Rotation stops when you release either button.

The current degree of rotation appears in either the upper or lower part of the display, depending on image orientation. Because the center of the image array is the pivot point, you can achieve a 360-degree view.

► To rotate the X7-2t transducer image plane using the transducer controls, do either of the following:

- To rotate the imaging plane toward the 180-degree position, press the image plane rotation button that is distal to the system.
- To rotate the imaging plane toward the 0-degree position, press the button that is proximal to the system.

► To rotate the X7-2t transducer image plane using a system control, use the **Seek Angle** soft key.

Using the X8-2t TEE Transducer

Philips recommends familiarizing yourself with the controls and parts of the transducer before using it in a study.

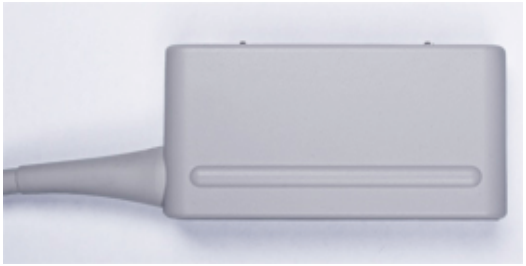
WARNING

Use the X8-2t transducer only on patients weighing at least 30 kg (66 lb), to ensure that the esophagus can comfortably accommodate the transducer.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

TEE Transducer Components

Component	Description
	Distal tip
	Transducer connector

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Component	Description
	Transducer handle
	Deflection controls, image plane rotation buttons, and configurable middle button

X8-2t Deflection Controls

The smaller knob controls medial/lateral movement, while the larger knob controls anterior/posterior movement. To place the tip of the TEE transducer into the neutral position, align the ribs on each knob with the middle button between the array rotation buttons (as shown in the following table).

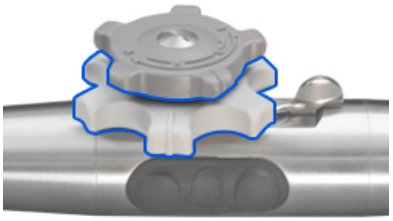
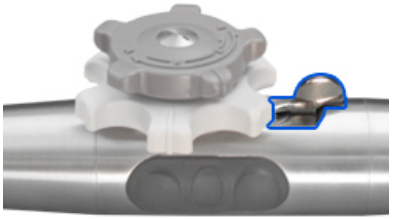
The knobs can be controlled by a detent brake that holds the tip position without locking it in place. This allows the tip to straighten if it meets additional resistance. When the detent brake actuator is rotated to the right (as shown in the following table) both knobs are in the freewheeling mode. When the detent brake actuator is centered, the small knob (medial/lateral movement) is in the detent mode, and when the actuator is rotated to the left, both knobs are in the detent mode.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

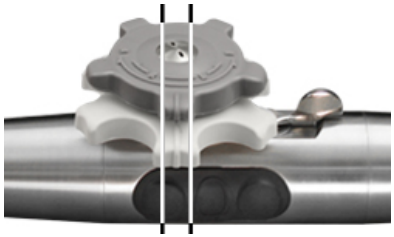
The middle button, between the image plane rotation buttons, can be configured for various functions (see “Configuring the X8-2t Middle Button” on page 357).

X8-2t TEE Transducer Controls

Control	Description
	Medial/lateral control
	Anterior/posterior control
	Detent brake actuator

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Control	Description
	Image plane rotation buttons
	Middle button (configurable)
	Neutral position indicators, showing no deflection

Manipulating the X8-2t Tip

Review the warnings and caution in “Patient Safety During TEE Studies” on page 318 and “TEE Deflection Control Basics” on page 328 before using the transducer in a study.

1. Turn the detent brake actuator fully away from the image plane rotation buttons to put both knobs into freewheeling mode.
2. Turn the large knob to deflect the tip in the anterior/posterior plane.
3. Turn the small knob to deflect the tip in the medial/lateral plane.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4. When the tip is positioned properly, do one of the following:
   - Turn the detent brake actuator fully toward the image plane rotation buttons to put both knobs in detent mode.
   - Center the detent brake actuator to put only the small knob (medial/lateral movement) in the detent mode.

Rotating the X8-2t Image Plane

You can use the transducer controls or a control on the ultrasound system to rotate the image plane to achieve a 360-degree view of the heart.

To rotate the X8-2t transducer image plane using the transducer controls, do either of the following:

- To rotate the imaging plane toward the 180-degree position, press the image plane rotation button that is distal to the system.
- To rotate the imaging plane toward the 0-degree position, press the button that is proximal to the system.

NOTE

Rotation stops when you release the control.

To rotate the image plane on the X8-2t transducer using the system control, use the **Seek Angle** soft key.

Configuring the X8-2t Middle Button

1. Connect and select the X8-2t transducer.
2. On the 2D tab, touch **TEE Button**.
3. Select one of the following:

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- **None**, to have the button do nothing.
- One of the listed control names, to have the button perform the function of the control of the same name.

The selected function appears on the **TEE Button** control.

Checking the TEE Transducer

Before each TEE exam, carefully inspect the transducer and try the controls, as described in the subordinate topics.

TEE Transducer Inspection

Carefully inspect the entire surface of the distal tip and flexible shaft for protrusions, holes, dents, abrasions, cuts, burrs, or cracks that could be extremely hazardous to both you and your patient.

Carefully feel the tip and shaft, and inspect the entire transducer. If you suspect an electrical problem, follow the electrical safety check procedure described in "Transducer Electrical Safety Testing" on page 289.

Also check for excessive flexibility in the tip, particularly in the medial/lateral direction. Do not use the transducer if the tip is extremely flexible. If you have any questions about tip flexibility, contact your Philips service representative.

TEE Transducer Controls Inspection

Use the deflection controls to position the tip in every possible direction, both to ensure that the controls work properly and to get used to the feel of the TEE transducer. Make sure that the controls operate smoothly without binding, and that you can achieve all possible positions easily before introducing the TEE transducer into the patient.

Test the detent brakes and freewheeling mode. Remember that the controls must be in freewheeling mode (no deflection and no brake resistance) when repositioning or withdrawing the transducer, as well as whenever you are not imaging.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

For more information, see the following:

- "Manipulating the S7-3t TEE Tip" on page 335
- "Manipulating the S8-3t Tip" on page 343
- "Manipulating the X7-2t Tip" on page 351
- "Manipulating the X8-2t Tip" on page 356

Special Considerations for TEE Studies

Special considerations regarding TEE studies are advisable for patients with existing gastroesophageal abnormalities, such as esophageal varices, hiatal hernia, tumor, diverticula, esophageal webs and rings, fistulae, or peptic ulcers, as well as for patients who have had anti-reflux procedures. In addition, you should do the following:

- Consider the patient's size and ability to accommodate the transducer tip and shaft.
- Check the patient's history for gastroesophageal disease or difficulty swallowing.
- Evaluate the potential overall effects of any treatment that the patient is undergoing, such as mediastinal radiation, chemotherapy, anticoagulation, or steroid therapy.
- Be aware that you may discover unsuspected esophageal pathology during a study. Be alert for congenital problems with the esophagus or stomach, particularly with pediatric patients.
- When examining a patient with an above-normal temperature, use the Auto-Cool feature and enter the patient temperature. The Auto-Cool feature is described in "TEE Temperature Sensing" on page 364.

This list is not comprehensive. Rather, it suggests areas to investigate when considering TEE for a particular patient.

Patient Selection for TEE Transducer Use

Although the TEE transducers can provide clinical data not available from other instruments, you should consider which patients can safely use the TEE transducers.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

The ability of a patient to swallow or accommodate the transducer should be considered.

WARNING

You must consider any history of gastroesophageal diseases as well as the possible effects of other therapies that the patient is undergoing. You must also consider all gastroesophageal abnormalities or difficulty swallowing.

The following table lists the minimum patient weight when using TEE transducers.

TEE Transducer Minimum Patient Weight

TEE Transducer	Minimum Patient Weight
S7-3t	3.5 kg (7.7 lb)
S8-3t	2.5 kg (5.5 lb)
X7-2t	30 kg (66 lb)
X8-2t	30 kg (66 lb)

Preparing Patients for TEE Studies

These suggestions for pre-study patient preparation do not constitute an exhaustive list of all possible factors to explore before performing transesophageal echocardiography, nor do they imply medical protocols. Instead, they reflect basic guidelines resulting from extensive consultation with physicians throughout the design, development, and clinical investigation periods of Philips TEE transducers.

- Besides gathering routine background information such as current medication and allergies, investigate any history of chronic obstructive lung disease, esophageal strictures, varices, or bleeding.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- Thoroughly explain the procedure to the patient before the study.
- Inform the patient not to eat or drink for at least 6 hours before the study.
- Advise the patient that he or she should not plan to drive after the study, because sedatives are often used.
- Follow institutional guidelines for obtaining patient consent for a transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) study.
- Be sure that the recent ECG, CBC, and SMA6 are available as a baseline.

TEE Study Guidelines

During a TEE study, an assistant can provide oral and pharyngeal suctioning of the patient and can monitor the patient's blood pressure and general responses. For unexpected occurrences, an emergency cart with basic life-support equipment should be ready. Throughout the study, it is important to carefully monitor the patient's reactions and to ensure that ventilation and vital signs are stable.

In the operating room, do not use TEE transducers during surgical procedures requiring extreme neck flexion, such as sitting craniotomies. The following are important guidelines for TEE studies. (See "TEE Transducer References" on page 371.)

- Minimize the possibility of transducer tip fold-over. This problem has occurred rarely, but its consequences can be serious. See "Tip Fold-Over" on page 362.
- Maintain a patent airway. For surgical patients, endotracheal intubation establishes a stable, patent airway before insertion of the transducer. For patients who are awake, carefully monitor the patient's breathing at all times.
- Minimize the possibility of pressure necrosis (tissue death). Do not let the distal tip displace any one segment of tissue for more than 5 consecutive minutes. Also make sure the deflection area and the distal tip are in the position of least potential pressure. Be sure that the transducer is in a freewheeling mode and unplugged whenever you are not imaging.
- Prevent potential esophageal damage. Philips recommends that you stop TEE scanning and unplug the transducer from the system during periods of poor perfusion, circulatory arrest, or the hypothermic phase of open heart surgery. To discontinue scanning, unlock the transducer connector.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- Before each TEE study, carefully inspect the transducer, as described in "Checking the TEE Transducer" on page 358. A thorough inspection procedure is required for the safety of the patient and you, and to ensure the continued correct functioning of the transducer.
- Never use excessive force when inserting, operating, or withdrawing a transducer, and make sure the deflection area is straight during insertion and withdrawal. Forceful insertion, manipulation, or withdrawal of a transducer can result in lacerations, bleeding, perforation, tearing of adhesions, and ligament damage. Also be aware that the tip can fold over, causing similar damage.
- Refrain from handling the distal tip whenever possible. If you must handle the distal tip, grasp it on the sides. Do not touch the top or bottom. Support the transducer's proximal head, either by having an assistant hold the steering mechanism or by clamping the transducer at the steering mechanism. Ensure that the clamp does not interfere with steering, and do not clamp any part of the flexible shaft, as this will damage the transducer.

Tip Fold-Over

On rare occasions, the tip of a TEE transducer has folded over during insertion. The effects can be serious if the situation is handled incorrectly. The esophagus can be scraped, perforated, or otherwise damaged.

Recognizing Tip Fold-Over

The TEE transducer tip might be folded over in the patient if you encounter any of the following:

- Resistance to advancing or removing the transducer
- An inability to turn the control knobs
- Fixation of the control knobs in the maximum flexion position
- Extreme difficulty in obtaining an image

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Correcting Tip Fold-Over

If you suspect the transducer tip is folded over, Philips' physician consultants recommend that you gently try to manipulate the transducer. If the tip does not have the brake on and it is not jammed in a doubled-over position, and you can move it forward, advance the transducer into the stomach. Then straighten the tip and remove the transducer.

If you cannot move the tip in any direction, Philips' consultants recommend that you X-ray the patient to evaluate the situation. You might also want to involve a gastroenterologist or anesthesiologist.

Preventing Tip Fold-Over

The following steps can prevent the tip from folding over. This list is not exhaustive; other factors can also be involved.

Using Correct Insertion Technique

You may find transducer insertion easier if you guide the transducer into the patient's mouth with your fingers. You also may want to set the brake to restrict medial/lateral tip movement.

WARNING

All patients should wear a bite guard during a TEE exam. A bite guard protects against dangerous transducer mechanical and electrical malfunction caused by involuntary biting. Even anesthetized patients require bite guards to prevent damage to both their teeth and to the transducer. For information on bite guards available from Philips, see “Bite Guards” on page 370.

WARNING

Do not use the deflection brake on pediatric patients.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Avoid the following when inserting any TEE transducer into a patient:

- Any excessive flexion of the transducer tip, particularly in the medial/lateral direction
- Catching the tip in pharyngeal recesses
- Insertion when a patient is being uncooperative or is having a convulsion or spasm

Reviewing Patient Esophageal Pathology

Carefully review a patient's medical history for obstructing pathologies or anatomical irregularities before performing a TEE exam.

Ensuring Proper Transducer Maintenance

Thoroughly examine the transducer and test the controls before each exam. Be sure to check for excessive flexibility in the tip. See “TEE Transducer Inspection” on page 358.

TEE Temperature Sensing

The transesophageal transducers contain built-in temperature sensors near the distal tip. The sensor monitors the transducer’s temperature to prevent potential burning of esophageal tissue. The patient’s actual temperature is required to accurately estimate the distal tip temperature. By default the system assumes that the patient temperature is 37°C (98.6°F). You must manually enter the actual patient temperature if it is above 37°C (98.6°F).

The Auto-Cool feature provides warning messages at two points:

- At 41.0°C (105.8°F), the **TEE Auto Cool Imminent** message appears.
- At 42.5°C (108.5°F), the **TEE Auto Cool In Progress** message appears, and the system automatically stops scanning.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

If the patient temperature is above 37°C (98.6°F) and the Patient Temp control is set below the actual patient temperature, then the system can overestimate the temperature of the TEE transducer's distal tip. This can prematurely trigger the Auto-Cool feature. If the patient temperature is at or near 37°C (98.6°F) and the Patient Temp control is set above the actual patient temperature, then the system can underestimate the temperature of the distal tip. This can expose patients to excessive temperatures.

Ensuring Safe TEE Temperatures

To ensure patient safety and to avoid unnecessary interruption while scanning, follow these suggestions:

- Ensure distal-tip-temperature accuracy by entering an accurate patient core temperature.
- Before introducing a TEE transducer, decrease the transducer temperature by using the **Output Power** control to decrease acoustic output, and then keep the control at the lowest possible setting during the exam.
- Use the TEE Manual Auto-Cool safety feature to enter the patient temperature if it is above 37°C (98.6°F) as described in “Entering Patient Temperature” on page 368.
- If the transducer temperature begins to rise when you are using high-power modes such as Live 3D, Color, Tissue Harmonic Imaging, and Doppler, temporarily switching to fundamental 2D mode or freezing the image can help cool the transducer.

Manual Auto-Cool Feature

Use the TEE Manual Auto-Cool safety feature to enter above-normal patient temperatures. When the temperature display is enabled, you can see both the patient temperature and the distal tip temperature while scanning.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

The patient temperature shown on the ultrasound display is always either 37°C (98.6°F) or the temperature that you manually enter. The system does not monitor or report the actual patient temperature.

If the distal tip temperature reaches 41°C (105.8°F), a warning message appears and the transducer temperature is displayed in inverse video. If the temperature reaches 42.5°C (108.5°F), the system enters Auto-Cool, during which it displays a message and stops scanning. It exits Auto-Cool and returns to normal operation when the temperature falls below 42°C (107.6°F). If the transducer temperature continues to 43.5°C (110.3°F), the transducer is automatically deselected. If the patient temperature is higher than 37°C (98.6°F), the system shutdown temperature adjusts accordingly. You must manually disconnect and then reconnect the transducer to resume imaging.

WARNING

To avoid the risk of esophageal burn for adult patients, minimize the time spent imaging at distal tip temperatures in excess of 42°C (107.6°F). Exposure should be limited to 10 minutes or less at 42°C (107.6°F) or higher.

WARNING

Sufficient data on thermal tolerance of the esophagus in neonate and pediatric patients does not exist, but it is likely these patients are more vulnerable than adults. Minimize the time spent imaging at distal tip temperatures in excess of 41°C (105.8°F).

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Using the Temperature Display

Both the patient temperature (assumed or entered) and the transducer temperature appear in the lower left corner of the display when enabled. On the display, the patient temperature is labeled **PAT T**, and the transducer temperature is labeled **TEE T**.

A less-than sign (<) after **TEE T** indicates that the transducer's distal tip temperature is below the patient temperature (**PAT T**) assumed by the system, which is either 37°C (98.6°F) or the temperature you entered.

1. Connect the transducer and select a preset.
2. Swipe to the second touch screen.
3. Touch **Temp Display** to display or hide the temperature display.
4. Touch **Temp Units** to switch the temperature scale between Fahrenheit and Celsius.

NOTE

If you want the temperature display enabled by default, turn on the temperature display and then create a preset as described in “Creating 2D Quick Save Presets” on page 238.

Patient Temperature

Entering a patient’s temperature enables the Auto-Cool feature to calculate tip temperature more accurately, which can prevent unnecessary interruptions while scanning. If a patient’s temperature is above normal, entering a temperature can avoid exposing the patient to excessive temperatures.

Always check the patient’s temperature before inserting a TEE transducer. If it is above normal, whether from fever or therapeutic heating from a cardiac bypass heart-lung machine, perform the procedure in “Entering Patient Temperature” on page 368 before inserting the transducer. Also, follow that procedure if a patient’s temperature rises during a study.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Measure the patient's core temperature, or more specifically, the actual temperature in the esophagus. For patients undergoing surgery, determine the temperature in the esophagus by direct measurement or by monitoring the temperature of blood returning from the bypass pump heat exchanger.

For closed-chest situations, rectal temperature is the best estimate of core temperature. You can also use oral temperatures, even though they can be one degree lower than the core temperature. If you measure an auxiliary temperature, which can be two degrees lower than the core temperature, add one or two degrees.

Entering Patient Temperature

1. If necessary, select the TEE transducer.
2. Turn **Pat Temp** to enter the patient's measured temperature.

NOTE

Each time you turn off or reset the system, or enter a new patient ID, the system assumes that the patient temperature is 37°C (98.6°F).

Resuming Imaging After Auto-Cool

WARNING

The Reconnect the Transducer error message is often caused by a poorly seated transducer connector, but it could be caused by a failure in the Auto-Cool safety logic. In the case of a logic failure, distal tip temperatures could reach 46.5°C (115.7°F) in hyperthermic patients (40°C to 41°C or 104°F to 106°F) before the error causes scanning to stop. At this temperature, esophageal burns may occur (see "TEE Transducer References" on page 371).

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

If the distal tip temperature drops below 42.5°C (108.5°F), the system resumes imaging. If the Auto-Cool message persists longer than 1 minute or an error message appears, contact your Philips service representative.

The system shuts down if the patient -applied part temperature of the TEE transducer exceeds 42.5°C (108.5°F), given an entered patient temperature of 37°C (98.6°F). If the patient temperature is higher than 37°C (98.6°F), the system shutdown temperature adjusts accordingly. You may need to restart the system by pressing the (On/Off) control.

1. Move the locking lever to the unlocked position, and pull the connector out of the receptacle.
2. Reseat the connector in the receptacle and move the locking lever to the locked position.
3. Select the transducer and preset.
4. If the system does not resume imaging after the transducer has initialized, shut down the system and then restart it.

Patient Care After a TEE Study

Follow your institutional guidelines for post-TEE studies. Additionally, you might want to include the following recommendations in your guidelines as part of your post-TEE study routine.

- Inspect the patient's throat for any bleeding.
- Examine the patient for postural hypotension or difficulty walking.
- Instruct the patient to contact you immediately if he or she experiences any fever, chills, chest pain, or bleeding.
- Instruct the patient not to eat or drink for at least 2 hours or until swallowing returns to normal after anesthesia has worn off. It is especially important that the patient not ingest hot foods or fluids during this period.
- Follow up with a call to the patient the day after the study to make sure there are no complications.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

TEE Accessories and Supplies

Each TEE transducer comes with disposable bite guards and a disposable tip protector. Bite guards, TEE transducer covers, tip protectors, and disposable drapes are described here. For information on ordering TEE accessories, see “Supplies and Accessories” on page 26.

Bite Guards

WARNING

The M2203A bite guard strap contains natural rubber latex, which may cause allergic reactions. For more information, see “FDA Medical Alert on Latex” on page 68.

CAUTION

Damage caused when patients bite or scrape a TEE transducer is not covered in the transducer warranty or your service contract. Use bite guards to help prevent such accidents.

All patients must wear a bite guard during a TEE study. A bite guard prevents dangerous transducer mechanical and electrical malfunctions caused by involuntary biting. Even anesthetized patients require bite guards to prevent damage to their teeth and to the transducer. Philips supplies disposable bite guards that are suitable for both awake and anesthetized patients.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

TEE Transducer Covers

WARNING

Transducer covers may contain natural rubber latex and talc. Those covers may cause allergic reactions in some individuals. For more information, see "FDA Medical Alert on Latex" on page 68.

Philips recommends the use of a legally marketed sterile transducer cover during every TEE study.

For procedures on using transducer covers (protective sheaths), see the instructions provided with the covers.

Tip Protectors

When not using a carrying case to transport a TEE transducer, use a tip protector on its distal tip. The tip protector helps prevent serious damage to the transducer lens. Philips supplies tip protectors designed for each of its TEE transducers.

Disposable Drapes

During studies in which you believe contamination of the imaging system can occur, Philips recommends that you take universal precautions and cover the system with a disposable drape. Consult your hospital's rules regarding equipment use in the presence of infectious disease.

TEE Transducer References

Cucchiara, R.F., et al. "Air Embolism in Upright Neurosurgical Patients: Detection and Localization by Two-dimensional Transesophageal Echocardiography." *Anesthesiology*, 353-355, 1984.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Gussenhoven, Elma, et al. "Transesophageal Two-dimensional Echocardiography: Its Role in Solving Clinical Problems." *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 975-979, 1986.

Radwin, Martin, et al. "Transesophageal Echocardiography: Intubation Techniques." *Philips Application Note 5091-2804E*, 1992.

Urbanowitz, John H., et al. "Transesophageal Echocardiography and Its Potential for Esophageal Damage." *Anesthesiology*, Vol. 72, No. 1, 1990.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

11 Endocavity Transducers

Endocavity transducers provide high-resolution endocavity imaging for obstetric and GYN applications. The system supports the 3D9-3v, BP10-5ec, C9-4v, C10-3v, and C10-4ec endocavity transducers.

For information on connecting transducers, see “Connecting Transducers” on page 223. For more information on caring for and maintaining transducers, see *Care and Cleaning of Ultrasound Systems and Transducers* and *Disinfectants and Cleaning Solutions for Ultrasound Systems and Transducers*.

WARNING

Always remove the transducer from the patient before defibrillation.

WARNING

Before defibrillation, if you cannot remove the transducer from the patient, always disconnect invasive transducers that remain in contact with the patient from the ultrasound system.

Operators of Endocavity Transducers

Philips endocavity transducers are designed for use under the guidance of physicians who are properly trained in endocavity ultrasound imaging techniques, according to currently approved relevant medical practices. Philips recommends that physicians operating any Philips endocavity transducer have the following qualifications:

- Proficiency in recognizing and interpreting imaging patterns
- Thorough familiarity with the safe operation, care, and maintenance of the system and endocavity transducers

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- Thorough familiarity with the latest endocavity methods through literature and seminars

Patient Safety During Endocavity Studies

To operate an endocavity transducer, you must be under the guidance of a physician who is properly trained in endocavity ultrasound imaging techniques, according to currently approved relevant medical practices. You also must be thoroughly familiar with the safe operation, care, and maintenance of the ultrasound system used with the transducer, as well as proficient at interpreting the images generated.

To help ensure patient safety when using an endocavity transducer, observe the following guidelines:

- Scrutinize the entire transducer before each use (see *Care and Cleaning of Ultrasound Systems and Transducers*).
- Operate the transducer properly.
- Do not allow water or other liquids to drip onto the transducer connector, the interior of the system, or the control panel.
- Use sterile ultrasound transmission gel when performing all endocavity studies.
- Legally marketed sterile protective covers are recommended for endocavity procedures; the protective covers are mandatory in China and Japan.
- Ensure that no part of the transducer contacts the patient's skin or tissue for a prolonged length of time.
- Use procedures or an appropriate device to avoid or minimize pressure between the patient and the transducer external components.
- Always monitor any pressure points where the transducer components contact the patient.

For electrical safety test procedures, see “Transducer Electrical Safety Testing” on page 289.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

Always remove the transducer from the patient before defibrillation.

WARNING

Before defibrillation, if you cannot remove the transducer from the patient, always disconnect invasive transducers that remain in contact with the patient from the ultrasound system.

Preventing Endocavity Transducer Problems

WARNING

If you find any signs of damage to the transducer, patient safety may be compromised. Do not use the transducer, and contact your Philips service representative.

Meticulous inspection and correct and careful operation of endocavity transducers are imperative to patient safety. The situations listed here affect safe operation as well as the ability to service mechanical problems under the Philips warranty or service contract. Transducer repairs necessitated by misuse are not covered and can be very costly, often requiring complete disassembly and rebuilding of the transducer.

There are three primary areas of transducer misuse:

- Cuts and abrasions on the transducer insulation and lens from sharp instruments such as scalpels, scissors, and clamps
- Improper disinfection techniques, causing fluid to enter the transducer or damage transducer materials
- Damage caused by dropping the transducer on a hard surface

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

To minimize the chance of damage, Philips strongly recommends that you clearly post stringent protocols for the care of endocavity transducers, based on the information provided here.

Electrical Safety and Endocavity Transducers

All Philips ultrasound systems and transducers comply with common medical device electrical safety standards.

For electrical safety information about endocavity transducers, see “Leakage Current and Endocavity Transducers” on page 376.

For safety information on electrosurgical units, pacemakers, defibrillators, and related topics, see “Electrical Safety” on page 35.

Leakage Current and Endocavity Transducers

WARNING

Only a technically qualified person should perform leakage current test procedures.

WARNING

Leakage current tests should be performed if the transducer has been dropped or if cracks or cuts are found on the transducer.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

Stand-alone test devices can perform indication-of-leakage tests *only*. The devices cannot diagnose the problem or provide a mitigation. Any stand-alone test failure indicates the need for complete safety testing of the transducer with the ultrasound system. For assistance, contact the authorized Philips representative.

Philips transducers approved for endocavity use are labeled on the transducer connector as Type BF () or Type CF () in accordance with IEC 60601-1. Type CF transducers provide the highest degree of protection against electric shock and are suitable for all patient applications, including endocavity applications.

Leakage hazards are reduced further when the ultrasound system is plugged into an isolated power outlet, which is standard in most operating rooms.

Regularly perform the leakage current tests found in “Transducer Electrical Safety Testing” on page 289. The frequency of testing should be based on the procedures established by the hospital for operating-room-based equipment.

Preparing Transducers for Endocavity Use

1. Place 20 cc of sterile gel or saline into the transducer cover.
2. Carefully inspect each transducer cover before use, and discard it if you find tears or blemishes. Also inspect each transducer cover after use. If you find a tear, the patient or the transducer may have been contaminated.
3. Insert the transducer into the transducer cover and unfurl the transducer cover until it covers the transducer and its cable. The cover must be unfurled far enough to maintain the sterile field.
4. Use a sterile elastic band or clip to hold the proximal end of the transducer cover in place.
5. Ensure that wrinkles and bubbles over the face of the transducer are minimized. Check the transducer cover for tears or damage before proceeding.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

6. When operating the transducer, make sure that proper orientation is maintained to avoid interpretation confusion.

NOTE

To achieve good acoustic contact, make sure that the imaging surface is moist.

NOTE

Imaging improves with adequate coupling between the patient surface and the transducer-cover surface. Sterile water is a good acoustic-coupling agent during surgery.

Patient-Contact Parts

WARNING

Latex and talc are commonly used in sheaths marketed to help with infection control in transesophageal, endocavity, and intraoperative imaging applications, and during needle guidance and biopsy procedures. Examine the packaging to confirm latex and talc content. Studies have shown that patients can experience allergic reactions with natural rubber latex. See the FDA Medical Alert, March 29, 1991, reprinted in "FDA Medical Alert on Latex" on page 68.

NOTE

The ultrasound system and transducers discussed here do not contain natural rubber latex that contacts humans. Natural rubber latex is not used on any Philips ultrasound transducers.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Biopsy with Endocavity Transducers

Endocavity transducers are biopsy capable.

For more information on the biopsy guide feature, see the “Biopsy Guides” section.

NOTE

CIVCO Medical Solutions supplies biopsy kits for Philips transducers that are biopsy capable. For information on proper attachment of a biopsy bracket, consult the manufacturer’s instructions.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

12 Biopsy Guides

The biopsy guide feature helps you position transducers with biopsy needle-guide attachments. The biopsy guide feature displays guidelines on the image that show the anticipated path of the needle. You can use those guidelines to ensure that the needle or instrument is following the correct path.

Starter kits, which include the biopsy guide or biopsy guide bracket and procedure kits, are available from Philips. Biopsy guides and supplies are available from CIVCO Medical Solutions (see “Supplies and Accessories” on page 26).

For detailed information about using, cleaning, and sterilizing biopsy guides and brackets, see the instructions provided with the biopsy starter kits, guides, and brackets.

WARNING

Do not attempt to use the biopsy guide until you have read the instructions for selecting the display, installing the legally marketed sterile transducer cover, and verifying alignment of the biopsy guide.

WARNING

Biopsy guidelines are intended as guides only. Never use biopsy guidelines as an absolute reference.

WARNING

Biopsy guidelines do not take into account the possible bending of the needle.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

The biopsy guides for the L12-5 50 mm and L18-5 transducers have infinite-angle capability and can be installed on either side of the transducer; they do not constrain the biopsy needle to a particular path. Because the needle path is unpredictable, the **Biopsy** control is unavailable, and the biopsy graphics do not appear on the display when you are using these transducers. A biopsy with these transducers is a manual action.

Biopsy Guides and Supported Transducers

The following transducers support the use of biopsy guides.

Transducers That Support Biopsy Guides	
3D9-3v	L12-3
BP10-5ec	L12-4
C5-1	L12-5 50
C6-2	L18-5
C8-5	mC7-2
C9-2	S4-2
C9-4v	S5-1
C10-3v	V6-2
C10-4ec	V9-2
eL18-4	VL13-5
eL18-4 EMT	

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Attaching and Removing a Biopsy Guide

Detailed information about attachment and removal of biopsy guides is provided with the biopsy starter kits, guides, and brackets.

WARNING

Do not attempt to use the biopsy guide until you have read the instructions for selecting the display, installing the legally marketed sterile transducer cover, and verifying alignment of the biopsy guide.

WARNING

Inspect all components and the transducer. Ensure that the biopsy guide you are using is the correct one for the transducer, the system, and system software. Your Philips representative can verify this information for you.

WARNING

Use only Philips transducers and Philips-approved biopsy guides, covers, brackets, supplies, components, and accessories. Other brands may not properly fit Philips transducers. Improper installation may result in patient injury.

WARNING

Some biopsy guides must be installed over a legally marketed sterile transducer cover.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

After each use, biopsy guides must be either sterilized or disposed of, depending upon the type. See the instructions included with the biopsy guide.

Biopsy Guideline Display

WARNING

Do not attempt to use the biopsy guide until you have read the instructions for selecting the display, installing the legally marketed sterile transducer cover, and verifying alignment of the biopsy guide.

The system generates a biopsy guideline through the displayed real-time ultrasound image to indicate the anticipated path of the needle. You can use that guideline to ensure that the needle or instrument is following the correct path.

When the biopsy display is active, a biopsy guideline is displayed, entering from the left or right side of the screen, depending on the application and image presentation you have selected. You can change the image presentation by touching **Left/Right** or **Top/Bottom**. Image presentation is defined by the location of the orientation marker.

When depth is changed, the biopsy display redraws to reflect the new relationships at the new depth setting.

Biopsy Guides Touch Screen Controls

This topic describes the touch screen controls associated with the named mode. Some of the controls are visible immediately and others may be visible only when particular transducers or presets are active.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

To use a touch screen control or change its setting, touch it. If it is in the bottom two rows, turn the knob directly below it.

Name	Description
Biopsy	A control used to display the biopsy guideline.
Biopsy Angle	A control used to change the angle of the biopsy guideline.
Hide Guide Line	A control used to hide the biopsy guideline when the image is frozen.

Displaying the Biopsy Guideline

WARNING

When using a transducer with an infinite-angle biopsy guide, do not display a fixed-angle biopsy guideline.

The biopsy guideline can have a single, fixed path or multiple paths. The system determines which guideline to display based on the type of biopsy guide available for the transducer you have selected.

NOTE

The following procedure applies specifically to non-intervention applications.

1. Connect the transducer.
2. Touch a preset.
3. Touch the **2D** tab.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4. Touch **Biopsy**.
5. To change the angle of the biopsy guideline, touch **Biopsy Angle**.
6. To hide the biopsy guideline, touch **Hide Guide Line** when the image is frozen.

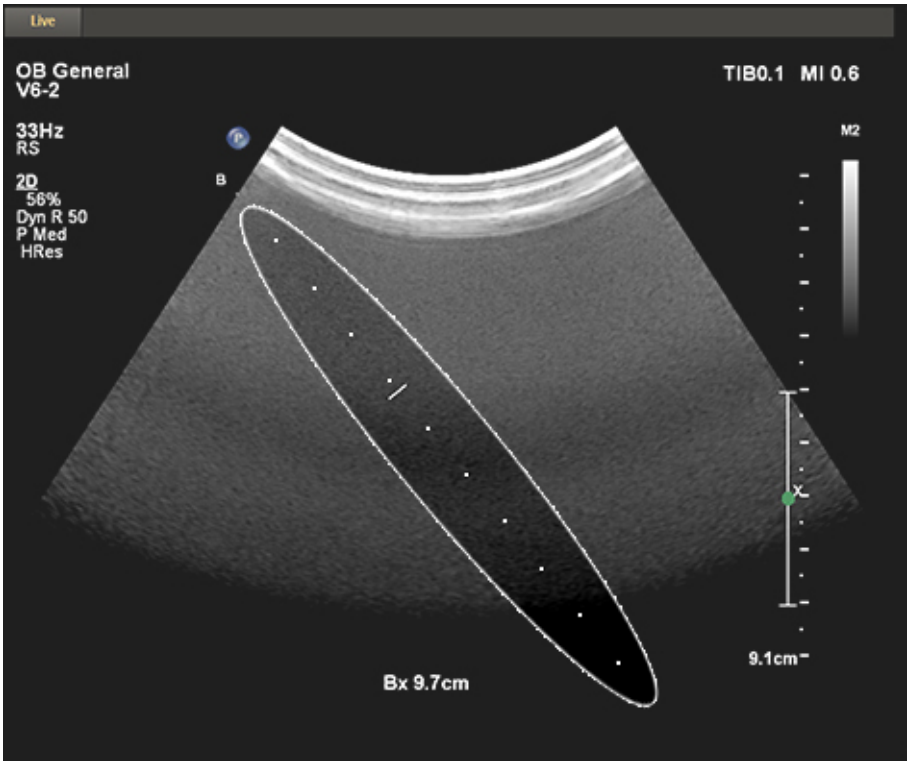
Moving the Biopsy Depth Cursor

A depth cursor appears on the biopsy guideline. The distance from the origin of the biopsy guide needle path to the depth cursor appears at the bottom of the imaging display.

Rotate the trackball to move the depth cursor along the guideline. The **Bx** measurement value changes to reflect the distance between the biopsy guide reference point origin and the depth cursor.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips



Biopsy Depth

Biopsy Guide Alignment

Perform the alignment verification before each use of the biopsy guide. The procedure verifies the system, transducer, and biopsy guide relationships.

WARNING

Alignment verification is necessary before performing procedures with the biopsy guide.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

WARNING

Do not use the biopsy guide if the needle is not following the intended path. Contact your Philips representative.

WARNING

The needle used for this alignment verification must not be used for the actual procedure. Always use a new, sterile needle for each biopsy procedure.

WARNING

To assist in an accurate projection of the needle, use a straight, new needle for each alignment procedure.

Preparation for Alignment Verification

Assemble the following items before performing the alignment verification:

- Transducer
- Biopsy guide or bracket (The bracket is not disposable. The type of bracket you use depends upon the transducer you are using. For the correct bracket, contact CIVCO Medical Solutions; see “Supplies and Accessories” on page 26.)
- Needle guide (Contact CIVCO for the needle guide that fits your biopsy guide bracket.)
- Sterile procedure kit (disposable)
- New, straight, biopsy needle
- Beaker of water (or water bath)

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Verifying the Biopsy Guide Alignment

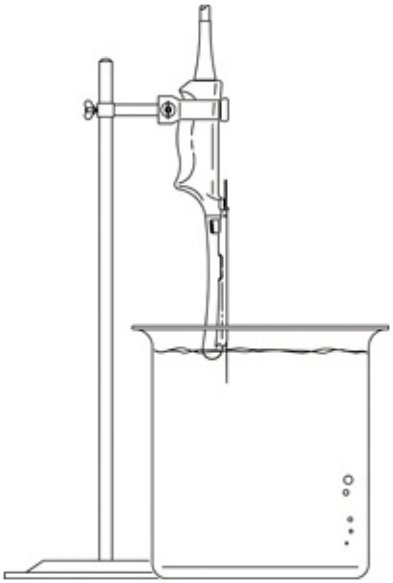
WARNING

If the needle enters from the unexpected side of the display or cannot be seen, verify that the biopsy guide is correctly mounted on the transducer and that the orientation of the transducer is correct. If the needle is still not following the expected path along the guideline, do not use the biopsy guide. Contact your Philips representative.

1. Attach the biopsy guide. Although some transducers require the use of a second transducer cover for biopsy procedures, a second transducer cover is unnecessary for this alignment verification.
2. Connect the transducer to the system, and select the appropriate applications and preset.
3. Set the system depth for the procedure to be performed.
4. Display the biopsy guideline.
5. Without changing the position of the biopsy depth cursor, note the default depth shown at the bottom of the display.
6. Immerse the transducer no more than 6 mm (0.25 in) into the water bath.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips



Immersing the Transducer

7. Select a new, straight needle that matches the needle-gauge size on the biopsy guide clip you are using (if applicable), select the guide channel on the biopsy guide (**A**, **B**, and so on), and use the **Biopsy** soft key to select the matching biopsy angle setting.
8. Insert the straight, new needle into the biopsy guide.
9. Move the needle down into the water bath until its ultrasound image is visible on the video display.
10. Verify that the needle, as seen on the video display, falls along the guideline along the entire depth of the guideline display. The biopsy guideline is intended only to provide an indication of the expected path of the needle. Actual position must be verified by identifying the echoes from the needle.
11. Remove the needle from the biopsy guide.
12. From the tip of the needle, measure a distance equal to the value noted in step 5. Mark this point on the needle.
13. Immerse the transducer no more than 6 mm (0.25 in) into the water bath.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

14. Insert the needle into a guide channel that corresponds to the size of the needle and the angle you selected. Continue sliding the needle in until the mark on the needle aligns with the origin on the biopsy guide. (The origin is the point at which the needle enters the biopsy guide.)
15. Move the biopsy depth cursor to the tip of the needle, as seen on the display, and verify that the displayed depth is within 4 mm (0.16 in) of the value noted in step 5.
16. Confirm that the needle is visible along its expected path. If so, then the biopsy guide is properly aligned.

Performing a Biopsy Procedure

WARNING

To prevent contamination by blood-borne pathogens, legally marketed sterile transducer covers with sterile ultrasound transmission gel are required for intraoperative applications, and during needle guidance and biopsy procedures. Protective covers are recommended for transesophageal, transrectal, and intravaginal procedures; in China and Japan, the covers are mandatory. Philips recommends the use of legally marketed sterile covers.

WARNING

Before the biopsy procedure, perform alignment verification at the selected depth to ensure that the biopsy guide and the needle have been installed properly.

WARNING

Use a straight, new, sterile needle for each procedure.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

Do not perform the biopsy guide procedure if the needle is not visible.

WARNING

The biopsy guideline is intended only to provide an indication of the expected path of the needle. Actual position must be verified by identifying the echoes from the needle.

WARNING

If the needle is not following the expected path, discontinue the procedure and contact your Philips representative.

WARNING

Thin needles can bend when entering tissue. Actual position must be verified by identifying the echoes from the needle.

WARNING

Reverberation or other tissue artifacts may produce false needle images, which can cause confusion in locating the actual needle image. Ensure the needle path is along the guideline, and that you are not using a false needle image to locate the needle.

WARNING

When using a transducer with an infinite-angle biopsy guide, do not display a fixed-angle biopsy guideline.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

Philips does not recommend anatomical survey of the prostate with the biopsy guide attached.

1. Install the transducer cover and the biopsy guide according to the instructions provided with the biopsy guide.
2. Select a new, straight needle that matches the needle-gauge size on the biopsy guide clip you are using (if applicable), and select the guide channel on the biopsy guide.
3. Set the system imaging controls for the biopsy procedure.
4. Touch a preset.
5. Touch the **2D** tab.
6. Touch **Biopsy**.
7. If the transducer supports multiple biopsy guides, select the biopsy guide you are using.
8. Orient the transducer to match image presentation. Use the display orientation marker  .
9. If necessary, apply sterile acoustic coupling gel to the patient.
10. Begin scanning the patient. Position the transducer so that the puncture target is intersected by the guideline on the display.
11. Do one of the following:
    - For guides with a single angle, insert the needle into the needle guide groove closest to the transducer.
    - For guides with multiple angles, insert the needle into the needle guide groove that corresponds to the angle you previously selected.
12. Perform the puncture by sliding the needle through the groove in the guide until the needle, as shown on the display, intercepts the target.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

13. If you are using a biopsy guide bracket and procedure kit, you can remove the transducer from the patient while the needle is still inserted in the patient: Separate the needle from the biopsy guide by pulling the tab up so that the clip snaps out of the needle guide, allowing the clip (still attached to the needle) and needle to separate from the biopsy guide (still attached to the transducer).
14. Remove the biopsy guide after use.

Biopsy Guide Maintenance

WARNING

The biopsy procedure kit components are disposable and must not be reused.

For information and instructions on cleaning, disinfecting, and sterilizing the biopsy guide, see the instructions provided with the biopsy guide.

Needle Visualization

The Needle Visualization feature provides optimized visualization of the needle during procedures that use standard biopsy needles. Needle Visualization is available in a specific area of the image. This area is defined by a dashed border superimposed on the image, and it is tied to the approach and angle setting that you select before starting the procedure.

WARNING

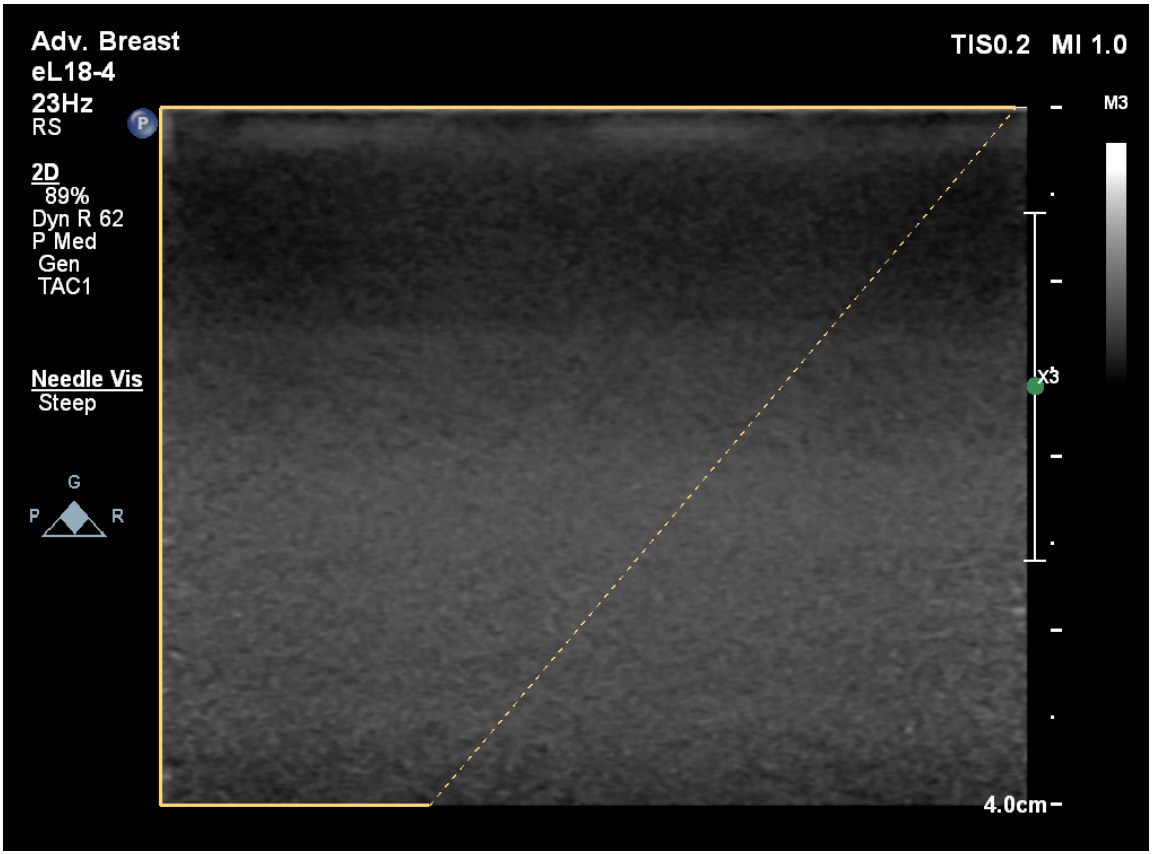
When Needle Visualization is on, the image may exhibit increased specular reflectors and reverberation artifacts.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

The needle is enhanced only in the area defined by amber lines (the region of enhancement). If the tip of the needle extends beyond this area, it may not be visualized. For maximum needle visualization, ensure that the target is centered within the region of enhancement.



Needle Visualization Area with Steep Needle Path

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

The Needle Visualization feature is available only with the eL18-4 and eL18-4 EMT transducers. It is available only in 2D imaging.

Needle Visualization Touch Screen Controls

This topic describes the touch screen controls associated with the named mode. Some of the controls are visible immediately and others may be visible only when particular transducers or presets are active.

To use a touch screen control or change its setting, touch it. If it is in the bottom two rows, turn the knob directly below it.

Name	Description
Needle Approach	A control used to select to approach the target from the left or the right.
Needle Path	A control used to select the needle path from predefined trajectory angles.
Needle Visualization	A control used to display or hide the Needle Visualization guideline.

Using Needle Visualization

WARNING

When Needle Visualization is on, the image may exhibit increased specular reflectors and reverberation artifacts.

WARNING

The needle is enhanced only in the area defined by amber lines (the region of enhancement). If the tip of the needle extends beyond this area, it may not be visualized. For maximum needle visualization, ensure that the target is centered within the region of enhancement.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

1. When you are ready to start the procedure, select an eL18-4 transducer or an eL18-4 EMT transducer, and then select a preset that supports Needle Visualization.
2. Ensure that 2D imaging is selected and all other imaging modes are off.
3. To turn on Needle Visualization, touch **Needle Visualization**. Needle Visualization is active within the solid and dotted lines.
4. While imaging the target, use **Needle Approach** to select a right or left approach. The needle approach is from the corner where the solid lines meet.
5. Use **Needle Path** to set the needle trajectory angle to **Shallow**, **Medium**, or **Steep**. For best results, select a needle angle perpendicular to the dotted amber line.
6. Start the procedure.
7. To identify specular reflectors or reverberation artifacts, turn Needle Visualization off and on by touching **Needle Visualization**.
8. When the procedure is complete, touch **Needle Visualization** to turn off Needle Visualization.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

13 System Maintenance

Maintenance should be performed regularly and as needed.

Because the system is a piece of medical equipment that contains several circuit boards, extensive service diagnostics, and complex operating software, Philips recommends that only trained personnel service the system.

WARNING

Always use protective eyewear and gloves when cleaning, disinfecting, or sterilizing any equipment.

CAUTION

Follow all instructions provided to avoid damage during cleaning, disinfection, and sterilization. Failure to do so could void your warranty.

Transducer Care

CAUTION

Do not apply adhesive films, such as Tegaderm, to the transducer lens. Application of such films can damage the lens.

All Philips transducers require proper care, cleaning, and handling. Reasonable care includes inspection, cleaning, and disinfection or sterilization. Transducers must be cleaned and disinfected or sterilized after each use. You must also carefully inspect all parts of the

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

transducer before each use. Check for cracks or other damage that jeopardizes the integrity of the transducer. Report any damage to your Philips representative and discontinue use of the transducer.

For detailed instructions on how to clean, disinfect, and maintain each type of transducer used with the system, including disinfectant compatibility, see *Care and Cleaning of Ultrasound Systems and Transducers* and *Disinfectants and Cleaning Solutions for Ultrasound Systems and Transducers*. Information on compatible disinfectants is also available at:

www.philips.com/transducercare

Cleaning and Maintaining the System

It is important to clean and maintain the ultrasound system and peripherals. Thorough cleaning is particularly important for pieces of peripheral equipment, because they contain electromechanical devices. If exposed to constant and excessive environmental dust and humidity, these devices will suffer in both performance and reliability.

Disinfectants and Cleaners for System Surfaces

The compatibility of disinfection and cleaning solutions varies depending on the item on which they are used.

It is your responsibility to appropriately clean and disinfect your device in accordance with the device manufacturer's instructions and with your institution's policies for cleaning and disinfecting of medical devices.

The products in the following table are compatible with these system surfaces:

- ECG trunk cables, leads, and electrodes
- External plastic and painted surfaces of system and cart
- System control panel
- Monitor screens and touch screens
- Easy-clip transducer cable managers

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Cleaning Solutions for All Surfaces	Cleaning Solutions for Monitor Screens and Touch Screens	Disinfectants for System Surfaces and Touch Screens
Mild soap solution[1]	• Mild soap solution[1] • Cleaners designed for LCDs or OLEDs • Purified water	• 70% isopropyl alcohol (IPA) (Not approved for touch screens) • Opti-Cide3 (QUAT/IPA based) • Oxivir Tb (accelerated hydrogen peroxide based) • Protex spray or wipes • Sani-Cloth HB (QUAT based) • Sani-Cloth Plus (QUAT/IPA based) • PI-Spray II (QUAT based)

1. Mild soap solutions do not contain any harsh ingredients and are not irritating to the skin. They must not contain fragrance, oils, or alcohols. Hand sanitizers are not approved for use.

CAUTION

Do not use abrasive cleaners, or acetone, MEK, paint thinner, or other strong solvents on the system, peripherals, or transducers.

CAUTION

Do not use Sani-Cloth AF3 or Super Sani-Cloth to disinfect the system.

CAUTION

Do not spill or spray liquid into any system seams, ports, or transducer receptacles.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

CAUTION

On monitor screens and touch screens, use microfiber cloth; do not use paper towels.

CAUTION

On monitor screens, do not use glass cleaners, Dispatch spray, or products containing bleach. Repeated use of such cleaners or products may damage the monitor screen surface. Immediately wipe away approved disinfectants or cleaners to prevent residue buildup. Use cleaners specifically designed for cleaning LCDs or OLEDs.

CAUTION

On touch screens, do not use Dispatch spray or products containing bleach or alcohol. Repeated use of such cleaners or products may damage the touch screen surface. Immediately wipe away approved disinfectants or cleaners to prevent residue buildup.

CAUTION

System surfaces and transducers are resistant to ultrasound gel, alcohol, and disinfectants, but if you use those substances, you must wipe them off to prevent permanent damage.

Cleaning and Disinfecting the System and ECG Equipment

The system control panel and other outer surfaces are most likely to be affected by liquid spills and other materials such as excessive amounts of gel. These materials may seep into electrical components under the panel and cause intermittent failures. During preventive maintenance, look for potential problems including loose knobs and worn controls.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

WARNING

Always use protective eyewear and gloves when cleaning, disinfecting, or sterilizing any equipment.

WARNING

The system contains high voltages and has the potential of shock during maintenance. To avoid risk of electrical shock hazards, always turn off the system, disconnect the main power cord from the wall outlet, and wait at least 30 seconds before cleaning the system.

CAUTION

Use only compatible cleaners and disinfectants on system surfaces. If a pre-mixed solution is used, be sure to observe the solution expiration date.

CAUTION

Ensure that the system brakes are locked before performing maintenance or cleaning.

CAUTION

Do not use abrasive cleaners, or acetone, MEK, paint thinner, or other strong solvents on the system, peripherals, or transducers.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

CAUTION

To avoid damage to the monitor screen or touch screen, do not touch them with any sharp object such as pencils or calipers. Take care not to scratch the face of the screen while cleaning.

CAUTION

On monitor screens and touch screens, use microfiber cloth; do not use paper towels.

CAUTION

When cleaning the system control panel, monitor screens, and touch screen, take care not to get any solution inside the housings. Do not spill or spray liquid on the controls, into the system cabinet, or into the transducer receptacles.

CAUTION

Do not spray disinfectant directly on system surfaces. When wiping, do not allow disinfectant to pool or run on system surfaces. In either case, disinfectant may leak into the system, damaging the system and voiding the warranty. Wipe only with a cloth or applicator that is lightly dampened.

CAUTION

System surfaces and transducers are resistant to ultrasound gel, alcohol, and disinfectants, but if you use those substances, you must wipe them off to prevent permanent damage.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Cleaning the System and ECG Equipment

1. Before cleaning, turn off the system, unplug the power cord from the power source, and ensure that the system brakes are locked.
2. To clean monitor screens and touch screens:
   a. Remove dust with a soft, dry, lint-free cloth. Philips recommends using a microfiber cloth.
   b. Use a liquid screen cleaner specifically designed for LCDs or OLEDs. Spray the liquid onto the cleaning cloth and gently wipe the screen clean. You can also use pre-moistened screen wipes.
   c. Dry the screen with a soft, dry, lint-free cloth.
3. To clean the control panel, remove any solid matter around the keys or the controls with a cotton swab or toothpick to ensure that solids are not pushed into the cabinet. Gently wipe with a soft cloth moistened with soap and potable water.
4. Wipe the remaining external surfaces of the system and the cart with a soft cloth lightly moistened (damp; not dripping) with soap and potable water:
   - Painted and plastic surfaces
   - ECG trunk cables, leads, and electrodes
   - Easy-clip transducer cable managers

   You may use a 70% isopropyl alcohol solution for stubborn stains or inks, and then wash with soap and potable water.
5. Gently remove any residue with a soft cloth moistened with purified water.
6. Dry the equipment to prevent potential corrosion.

If the equipment has come in contact with blood or infectious material, see “Disinfecting System Surfaces and ECG Equipment” on page 405.

Disinfecting System Surfaces and ECG Equipment

Before disinfecting the system and ECG equipment, read “Disinfectants and Cleaners for System Surfaces” on page 400.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

1. Before cleaning and disinfecting, turn off the system, disconnect the power cord from the power source, and ensure that the system brakes are locked.
2. Clean the system according to the procedures in “Cleaning the System and ECG Equipment” on page 405.
3. Choose a disinfectant compatible with your system and follow the label instructions for preparation, temperature, and solution strength. If a pre-mixed solution is used, be sure to observe the solution expiration date.
4. Wipe system surfaces with the disinfectant, following disinfectant label instructions for wipe durations, solution strengths, and disinfectant contact duration. Ensure the solution strength and duration of contact are appropriate for the intended clinical application.
5. Dry the equipment to prevent potential corrosion.

Cleaning the Trackball

Cleaning the trackball regularly prolongs its useful life and prevents service calls.

CAUTION

Do not use Sani-Cloth AF3 or Super Sani-Cloth. Severe damage occurs to the knobs and plastic surfaces.

1. With your fingers, rotate the retaining ring around the trackball counterclockwise to loosen the ring.
2. Remove the ring.
3. Bend a business card or other stiff paper to fit around the trackball and lift the trackball out of the mounting area.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

NOTE

You may also lift the trackball by attaching a piece of tape to it and using the tape to pull it up out of the recess. If you use this method, clean the trackball with alcohol to remove any tape adhesive.

4. Clean dust and debris from the trackball and the mounting area with a lint-free cloth, small brush, or cotton swab moistened with alcohol.
5. Clean the rollers with a cotton swab moistened with alcohol.
6. Place the ball back on the mounting area.
7. Align the retaining ring with the slots around the recess. The yellow dot on the underside of the ring should align with the yellow dot on the recess surface.
8. Ensure that the retaining ring is flush with the surface and with your fingers, rotate the retaining ring clockwise to lock it in place.

Cleaning the System Air Filter

The system air filter should be inspected every week and cleaned as needed. The air filter is located in a slot at the bottom left side of the system. If you decide to clean the air filter with soap and water, you may want to install a spare filter while the other filter is drying. Additional air filters can be ordered from Philips.

WARNING

Before performing any system maintenance or cleaning, always turn off the system and disconnect it from the power source.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

CAUTION

Turn off power before you remove the air filter. Do not turn on power without the air filter installed.

CAUTION

Ensure that the air filter is dry before installing it. Installing a wet or damp air filter can damage the system.

CAUTION

Ensure that the system brakes are locked before you clean the air filter.

1. Locate the air filter handle at the bottom of the left side of the system.
2. Pull the air filter handle straight out, until the filter is completely removed from the system.
3. Inspect the filter. Depending on the condition of the air filter, vacuum or rinse the filter with water to clean it. If the filter is worn out, or cannot be cleaned, replace it with a spare.
4. To reinstall the filter, slide the filter into place at the bottom of the left side of the system.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Removing the System Air Filter

Specifying and Resetting the Air Filter Maintenance Status

1. Press **Support**.
2. In **Philips SupportConnect**, click **Test/Utilities**.
3. Click **Service Messaging**.
4. Click **Check Filter Status**.
5. To change the cleaning interval for the air filter, under **Filter Cleaning**, type the number of days in **Interval**.
6. To reset the interval after cleaning the filter, under **Filter Cleaned**, click **Done**.
7. To exit **Philips SupportConnect**, touch **Close**.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Printer and DVD Recorder Maintenance

Before performing any maintenance on a device, observe the following warnings and cautions:

WARNING

If the device is internal to the system, turn off the system and disconnect the system from the wall outlet. If the device is external to the system, disconnect the device from the wall outlet.

CAUTION

Do not scratch the roller or allow dirt and dust to contact the roller of a printer.

CAUTION

Do not use abrasive cleaners, or acetone, MEK, paint thinner, or other strong solvents on the system, peripherals, or transducers.

CAUTION

Do not unplug the system from the wall outlet until the system is completely off. If you unplug your system before the shutdown message appears, you will have to wait longer than usual to use your system the next time you turn it on. You may also corrupt files, which can result in an inoperative system or the loss of patient data.

Periodically clean the external surfaces of a device with a soft cloth. Difficult stains may be removed with a cloth lightly dampened with a mild detergent solution.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Troubleshooting

If you encounter difficulty with system operation, use the information here to help correct the problem. If the problem is not covered here, contact your Philips representative.

The troubleshooting table contains a list of symptoms and the actions to take to correct the problems.

Troubleshooting

Symptoms	Corrective Action
The system does not power up. The monitor indicator light is off.	1. Verify the power connections. 2. Check the circuit breaker on the back of the system.
No image displays on the monitor.	1. After power up, the system takes about 20 seconds to initialize. During this time the monitor is blank. 2. After 20 seconds, adjust the monitor brightness. 3. Check the monitor cables and connections.
No audio comes from the system speakers.	Adjust the volume to ensure that the speakers are not muted.
An error message is displayed.	Run the system test (see “Testing the System” on page 413).
An error message indicates that the system is above normal operating temperature.	1. Click **Continue**. The system will power down automatically in 30 minutes. 2. With power off, check for obstructed air filters (see “Cleaning the System Air Filter” on page 407).

Error Messages

The system displays error messages in response to operating or error conditions detected by the system.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

The error messages must be noted and reported to your Philips representative, who may ask you to run the system test (see “Testing the System” on page 413).

Test Patterns

Two sets of test patterns are available for testing the image quality of the system, peripheral devices, review stations, or a PACS.

- The original set of test patterns (labeled **Test Patterns**) includes images intended for a variety of tests. Unlike the TG-18 test patterns, however, these test patterns are not tied to a unified standard.
- The newest set of test patterns was created by the American Association of Physicists in Medicine Task Group 18 (TG-18). The TG-18 test patterns on the system were adapted for the 1024 x 768 pixel image area of the 54.6-cm (21.5-in) system monitor. For information on using these test patterns, read IEC 62563-1.

Using the Test Patterns

To use the test patterns you must transfer the images to the patient directory and then print out the images.

1. Touch **Review**.
2. In **Patient Directory**, under **Source**, click **Hard Drive**, and then click **Test Imgs**.
3. Select **TG18 Test Patterns** or **Test Patterns**.
4. Click **Import**. A status message indicates that the transfer is in progress.
5. Select **TG18 Test Patterns** or **Test Patterns** from the exam selection list, and then click **Open**.
6. Do any of the following:
   - To send a test pattern to a local printer, double-click a test pattern to display it full-screen, and click **Print**.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- To send a test pattern to a DICOM printer or archive server, click a test pattern number to select it, click **Print To**, select a device, and click **OK**.

7. Follow the instructions in IEC 62563-1.

Testing the System

The system test is a comprehensive test of the system operational status. This test includes numerous subtests. If a subtest fails, the system completes the remaining subtests. The system test displays only a pass-fail result on the system monitor. If the system test fails, notify your Philips service representative.

Run the system test any time a system error is displayed, or if you suspect problems with the system. If an error message is displayed during the test, restart the system with the ⏻ (On/Off) control.

NOTE

The system test may require several minutes to run.

1. Turn on the system.
2. Disconnect all transducers from the system.
3. Press **Support**.
4. Click the **Test/Utilities** tab.
5. Click **System Test**.
6. Under **System Test**, click **Run**.
7. In the **System Test** dialog box, click **Yes** to begin the test. The System Test area shows the status of the test, the progress indicator, and **Cancel Test**. If you want to cancel the test, click **Cancel Test**. The system displays a message when the test is complete, indicating whether the test passed or failed.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

8. If the test fails, contact your Philips service representative for instructions about how to export the log files.
9. When the test is complete, click **OK** to close the **System Test** dialog box.
10. Touch **Close** to restart the system.

Transducer Element Check

You run the transducer element check from **Philips SupportConnect**. You may use this test as part of a regularly scheduled transducer quality assurance program or if you suspect that the transducer has been damaged.

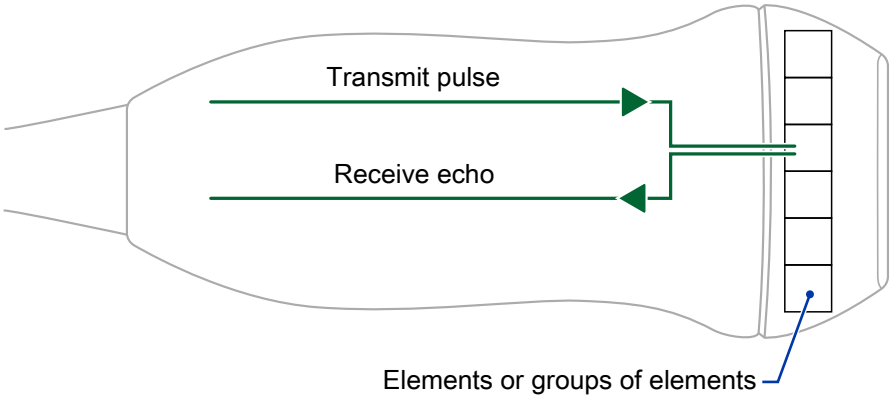
During the test, the system transmits a pulse to each element for standard transducers or to a group of elements for xMATRIX transducers. The echoes received from the transducer demonstrate that the transducer can transmit and receive, and indicate that the signals received are fairly uniform in strength.

NOTE

The transducer element check is a licensed option available only in the United States.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips



Transducer Test Signal Path

After the test is complete, the system displays one of the following:

- **Test Passed**: Indicates all transducer checks were successfully completed, and therefore, the transducer is ready for use.
- **Needs Evaluation**: Indicates that potential issues were detected in the transducer elements. To troubleshoot transducer issues, contact your authorized service representative.

Running the Transducer Element Check Test

1. Press **Support**.
2. Click the **Test/Utilities** tab.
3. Click **Hardware Utilities**.
4. Disconnect all transducers, and then click **Yes**.
5. Under **Interactive Utilities**, click **Transducer**, and then click **Run Test**.
6. Connect the transducer to the system.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

NOTE

Make sure the transducer face is clean and dry, and is not touching anything.

7. Under **Transducer Test**, click the transducer name, and then click **Run**.
8. Note the outcome of the test in the **Results** field: **Test Passed** or **Needs Evaluation** (see “Transducer Element Check” on page 414).
9. If **Needs Evaluation** is displayed, potential issues were detected in the transducer elements. Click **Export**, and contact your authorized service representative. For more information, see "Exporting Log Files" in the *Help*.
10. Click **Close**.

For Assistance

If you are unable to correct a problem, call your local Philips representative.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

14 Specifications

Philips reserves the right to change specifications contained herein or discontinue manufacture at any time without prior notice. Current specifications are supplied with each system purchased or are available from your Philips representative.

System Dimensions

- Width: 57.2 cm (22.5 in)
- Height: 142.2 cm to 162.6 cm (56 in to 64 in)
- Depth: 98.3 cm (38.7 in) at maximum extension
- Weight: 83.6 kg (184.4 lb) without peripheral devices

Transducer Insertion Dimensions

Transducer	Maximum Insertion Portion Width	Working Length (Intended Insertion Length)	Field of View
3D9-3v	26.3 mm	165 mm	155.5 degrees
BP10-5ec	17.9 mm	172 mm	126.2 degrees on each array
C9-4v	24.9 mm	165 mm	172 degrees
C10-3v	24.9 mm	165 mm	129 degrees
C10-4ec	21.1 mm	120 mm	152 degrees
S7-3t	10.9 mm	700 mm	90 degrees
S8-3t	7.65 mm	865 mm	88 degrees

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Transducer	Maximum Insertion Portion Width	Working Length (Intended Insertion Length)	Field of View
X7-2t	16.9 mm	1,000 mm	89 degrees
X8-2t	16.9 mm	1,000 mm	89 degrees

Display

Gray Shades

256 in 2D, M-mode, and Doppler

Scan Lines

Up to 1,024 scan lines, depending on transducer and mode

Monitor

- 21.5-inch (54.6-cm) wide-format, high-definition, flat-panel LCD (TFT/IPS) display
- 24-bit color

Connections

Input Signals

- Four transducer receptacles
- High- and low-level ECG
- Microphone for DVD recorder voice recording
- Pencil probe receptacle
- Physio pulse, phono, auxiliary 1, and auxiliary 2

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Output Signals

- External printer
- Physio analog signal
- USB serial data
- Video: S-Video and Digital DisplayPort

Data Connections

- Digital Navigation Link (DNL)
- Ethernet network (Gigabit, 10Base-T, and 100Base-T)
- USB 2.0 devices or USB 3.0 devices at USB 2.0 speeds
- Wireless network (IEEE 802.11 a/b/g/n/ac)
- Dual-frequency wireless network adapters

Modality Interface

DICOM standard. DICOM conformance statements for Philips products are available at this website:

https://www.philips.com/healthcare/resources/support-documentation/dicom-ultrasound

Physio

- ECG amplitude range: 0.15 mV to 5.0 mV
- Duration of the QRS wave: 40 ms to 120 ms
- Lower Frequency Cut-off: 0.70 Hz ±10%
- Upper Frequency Cut-off: 17 Hz ±10%
- Nominal Input Amplitude: ±5 mV peak
- Minimum QRS Wave Amplitude: 0.05 mV

Peripherals

- Barcode scanner

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

- Black-and-white image printer
- Color image printer
- DVD recorder
- External monitor
- Foot switch
- Report printer

Electrical Parameters

- AC voltage 100-240 Vac, 50/60 Hz
- Power consumption: 450 VA

Power must be available through a grounded outlet.

In the United States, power to the AC connector or AC adapter must be available through a grounded, hospital-grade outlet.

Environmental Limits

Operating and Storage Limits for Systems and Transducers

Parameter	Operating Limits	Storage Limits
Pressure	525 mmHg to 795 mmHg (700 hPa to 1,060 hPa)	427 mmHg to 795 mmHg (570 hPa to 1,060 hPa)
Humidity	15% to 80% non-condensing	0% to 93% relative humidity
Temperature	10°C to 40°C (50°F to 104°F)	-20°C to 60°C (-4°F to 140°F)[1]

1. V6-2 transducer temperature storage limits: -10°C to 60°C (14°F to 140°F).

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

CAUTION

Storing your system above 60°C (140°F) could deform the system casters.

NOTE

If the system is stored for prolonged periods at or near the low end of the storage temperature range, the system clock may need to be reset.

Safety and Regulatory Requirements

Classification

- Class I equipment with Type BF and Type CF isolated applied parts
- Ordinary Equipment/Continuous Operation
- Non-AP/APG

Electromechanical Safety Standards Met

The system complies with the requirements of IEC 60601-1, Medical Electrical Equipment, General Requirements for Safety, including all applicable collateral and particular standards, as well as all applicable national deviations.

Compliance

Philips products comply with relevant international and national standards and laws. Information on compliance will be supplied by your local Philips representative, or the manufacturer, on request.

Security

The system complies with the United States Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS).

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Service Life

Service life is defined by IEC 60601-1 as the amount of time that a medical device is expected to remain safe for use. The service life for medical device components may be defined by hours of use or number of times used.

NOTE

Regular maintenance is necessary for a medical device or component to perform for its expected service life.

The service life for the system is 10 years.

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

Index

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021

Philips

www.philips.com/healthcare

Philips Ultrasound, Inc.
22100 Bothell Everett Hwy
Bothell, WA 98021-8431
USA

EC REP

Philips Medical Systems Nederland B.V.
Veenpluis 6
5684 PC Best
The Netherlands

CE 2797

Published in USA
4535 620 96361_A/795 * AUG 2021 - en-US